

053 963 1081  
 018 011 1925  
 072 998 6008

087 231 7021  
 info@milnex-sa.co.za

4 Botha Street  
 SCHWEIZER-RENEKE

Waterberry Street,  
 Waterberry Square,  
 1st floor, Office 7  
 POTCHEFSTROOM

C/o Welgevonden &  
 Memorial Street,  
 Roylglen Office Park  
 KIMBERLEY

[www.milnex-sa.co.za](http://www.milnex-sa.co.za)

# ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT REPORT & ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT FOR:

The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

<b>NAME OF APPLICANT</b>	Bondeo 140 CC
<b>PREPARED BY</b>	Milnex CC Environmental Consultants
<b>TEL NO</b>	(018) 011 1925
<b>FAX NO</b>	087 231 7021
<b>POSTAL ADDRESS:</b>	P.O. Box 1086, Schweizer-Reneke, 2780
<b>PHYSICAL ADDRESS:</b>	4 Botha Street, Schweizer-Reneke, 2780
<b>REFERENCE NUMBER:</b>	NC30/5/1/1/2/12517PR

**Table of Contents**

PROJECT INFORMATION ..... 1

IMPORTANT NOTICE ..... 2

ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS ..... 1

OBJECTIVE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS ..... 1

SCOPE OF ASSESSMENT AND CONTENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT REPORTS ..... 2

A. CONTACT PERSON AND CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS ..... 2

B. DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY ..... 2

C. LOCALITY MAP ..... 4

D. DESCRIPTION OF THE SCOPE OF THE PROPOSED OVERALL ACTIVITY ..... 5

E. POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT ..... 16

F. NEED AND DESIRABILITY OF THE PROPOSED ACTIVITIES ..... 21

G. A MOTIVATION FOR THE PREFERRED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT ..... 21

H. A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS FOLLOWED TO REACH THE PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT ..... 22

    i) Details of the development footprint alternatives considered; ..... 22

    ii) Details of the Public Participation Process Followed ..... 28

    iii) Summary of Issues Raised by I&APs ..... 31

    iv) the environmental attributes associated with the development footprint alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects; ..... 35

    v) The impacts and risks identified including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts, including the degree to which these impacts— ..... 54

    vi) the methodology used in determining and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks; ..... 54

    vii) Positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity and alternatives will have on the environment and on the community that may be affected focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects; ..... 57

    viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied and level of residual risk; ..... 57

    ix) if no alternative development [location] footprints for the activity were investigated, the motivation for not considering such; and ..... 58

    x) a concluding statement indicating the location of the preferred alternative development [location] footprint within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report; ..... 58

I. A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS UNDERTAKEN TO IDENTIFY, ASSESS AND RANK THE IMPACTS THE ACTIVITY AND ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES AND INFRASTRUCTURE WILL IMPOSE ON THE PREFERRED [LOCATION] DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT ON THE APPROVED SITE ..... 58

J. AN ASSESSMENT OF EACH IDENTIFIED POTENTIALLY SIGNIFICANT IMPACT AND RISK, INCLUDING— ..... 66

K. SUMMARY OF THE FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS OF ANY SPECIALIST REPORT ..... 79

L. AN ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT WHICH CONTAINS— ..... 86

M. PROPOSED IMPACT MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES FOR INCLUSION IN THE EMPR ..... 88

N. FINAL PROPOSED ALTERNATIVES ..... 89

O. ASPECTS FOR INCLUSION AS CONDITIONS OF AUTHORISATION ..... 89

P. DESCRIPTION OF ANY ASSUMPTIONS, UNCERTAINTIES AND GAPS IN KNOWLEDGE ..... 89

Q. REASONED OPINION AS TO WHETHER THE PROPOSED ACTIVITY SHOULD OR SHOULD NOT BE AUTHORISED ..... 89

R. PERIOD FOR WHICH THE ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION IS REQUIRED ..... 90

S. AN UNDERTAKING UNDER OATH OR AFFIRMATION BY THE EAP IN RELATION TO: .....90

T. FINANCIAL PROVISION .....91

U. DEVIATIONS FROM THE APPROVED SCOPING REPORT AND PLAN OF STUDY .....92

V. ANY SPECIFIC INFORMATION THAT MAY BE REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY; AND .....92

W. COMPLIANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTIONS 24(4)(A) AND (B) OF THE ACT .....93

ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT .....95

A. DETAILS OF- .....95

B. DESCRIPTION OF THE ASPECTS OF THE ACTIVITY .....95

C. COMPOSITE MAP .....95

D. A DESCRIPTION OF THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT [OBJECTIVES] OUTCOMES, INCLUDING MANAGEMENT STATEMENTS, IDENTIFYING THE IMPACTS AND RISKS THAT NEED TO BE AVOIDED, MANAGED AND MITIGATED AS IDENTIFIED THROUGH THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS FOR ALL PHASES OF THE DEVELOPMENT INCLUDING— .....95

E. A DESCRIPTION AND IDENTIFICATION OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES REQUIRED FOR THE ASPECTS CONTEMPLATED IN PARAGRAPH (D);] .....96

F. A DESCRIPTION OF PROPOSED IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS, IDENTIFYING THE MANNER IN WHICH THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT [OBJECTIVES AND] OUTCOMES CONTEMPLATED IN PARAGRAPH (D) [AND (E)] WILL BE ACHIEVED, AND MUST, WHERE APPLICABLE, INCLUDE ACTIONS TO — .....97

G. MONITORING OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS .....157

H. MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY .....157

I. RESPONSIBLE PERSONS .....157

J. TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS .....157

K. MECHANISM FOR MONITORING COMPLIANCE .....157

L. A PROGRAM FOR REPORTING ON COMPLIANCE, TAKING INTO ACCOUNT THE REQUIREMENTS AS BY THE REGULATIONS; .....159

M. AN ENVIRONMENTAL AWARENESS PLAN DESCRIBING THE MANNER IN WHICH— .....159

N. SPECIFIC INFORMATION REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY .....159

PROJECT INFORMATION

**Project Name:** Application for an Environmental Authorisation for the proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

**Report Title:** EIR & EMPr


**Prepared By:** Milnex CC Environmental Consultants

**Date:** September 2020

---

**QUALITY CONTROL:**

---

	<b>Report Author:</b>	<b>Report Reviewer:</b>
<b>Name:</b>	Lizanne Esterhuizen Honours Degree in Environmental Science	N/A
<b>Signature:</b>		

---

**DISCLAIMER:**

*Copyright Milnex CC: All Rights Reserved.*

This document contains information proprietary to Milnex CC and as such should be treated as confidential unless specifically identified as a public document by law. Milnex CC owns all copyright and all other intellectual property rights in this report. The document may not be copied, reproduced in whole or in part, or used for any manner without prior written consent from Milnex CC. Copyright is specifically reserved in terms of the Copyright Act 98 of 1987 including amendments thereto. By viewing this disclaimer and by accepting this document, you acknowledge that you have read and accepted these Terms of Use and undertake to keep the information contained herein confidential and not to do any act or allow any act which is in breach of these Terms of Use.

**The DEA screening tool was used in compiling this document**



## IMPORTANT NOTICE

In terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002 as amended), the Minister must grant a prospecting or mining right if among others the mining “will not result in unacceptable pollution, ecological degradation or damage to the environment”.

Unless an Environmental Authorisation can be granted following the evaluation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and an Environmental Management Programme report in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) (NEMA), it cannot be concluded that the said activities will not result in unacceptable pollution, ecological degradation or damage to the environment.

In terms of section 16(3)(b) of the EIA Regulations, 2014, any report submitted as part of an application must be prepared in a format that may be determined by the Competent Authority and in terms of section 17 (1) (c) the competent Authority must check whether the application has taken into account any minimum requirements applicable or instructions or guidance provided by the competent authority to the submission of applications.

**It is therefore an instruction that** the prescribed reports required in respect of applications for an environmental authorisation for listed activities triggered by an application for a right or permit are submitted in the exact format of, and provide all the information required in terms of, this template. Furthermore please be advised that failure to submit the information required in the format provided in this template will be regarded as a failure to meet the requirements of the Regulation and will lead to the Environmental Authorisation being refused.

**It is furthermore an instruction that** the Environmental Assessment Practitioner must process and interpret his/her research and analysis and use the findings thereof to compile the information required herein. (Unprocessed supporting information may be attached as appendices). The EAP must ensure that the information required is placed correctly in the relevant sections of the Report, in the order, and under the provided headings as set out below, and ensure that the report is not cluttered with un-interpreted information and that it unambiguously represents the interpretation of the applicant.

## ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS

- (1) The environmental impact assessment process must be undertaken in line with the approved plan of study for environmental impact assessment.
- (2) The environmental impacts, mitigation and closure outcomes as well as the residual risks of the proposed activity must be set out in the environmental impact assessment report.

## OBJECTIVE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS

2. The objective of the environmental impact assessment process is to, through a consultative process-
  - a) determine the policy and legislative context within which the activity is located and document how the proposed activity complies with and responds to the policy and legislative context;
  - b) describe the need and desirability of the proposed activity, including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the preferred location;
  - c) identify the location of the development footprint within the preferred site based on an impact and risk assessment process inclusive of cumulative impacts and a ranking process of all the identified development footprint alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects of the environment;
  - d) determine the--
    - (i) nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts occurring to inform identified preferred alternatives; and
    - (ii) degree to which these impacts-
      - (aa) can be reversed;
      - (bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources, and
      - (cc) can be avoided, managed or mitigated;
  - e) identify the most ideal location for the activity within the preferred site based on the lowest level of environmental sensitivity identified during the assessment;
  - f) identify, assess, and rank the impacts the activity will impose on the preferred location through the life of the activity;
  - g) identify suitable measures to avoid, manage or mitigate identified impacts; and
  - h) identify residual risks that need to be managed and monitored.

## SCOPE OF ASSESSMENT AND CONTENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT REPORTS

### A. CONTACT PERSON AND CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

#### a) Details of:

- i) The EAP who prepared the report
- ii) Expertise of the EAP

Name of Practitioner	Qualifications	Contact details
Ms. Percy Sehaole Pr. Sci. Nat. EAPASA (2019/959)	Master's Degree in Environmental Science Master's Degree in Environmental Management (refer to <b>Appendix 1</b> )	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925 Fax No.: (053) 963 2009 e-mail address: <a href="mailto:percy@milnex-sa.co.za">percy@milnex-sa.co.za</a>
Lizanne Esterhuizen	Honours Degree in Environmental Science (refer to <b>Appendix 1</b> )	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925 Fax No.: (053) 963 2009 e-mail address: <a href="mailto:lizanne@milnex-sa.co.za">lizanne@milnex-sa.co.za</a>

### Summary of the EAP's past experience. (Attach the EAP's curriculum vitae as **Appendix 2**)

Milnex CC was contracted by **Bondeo 140 CC** as the independent environmental consultant to undertake the Scoping and EIA process for a Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape. The area applied for is located along the North Bank of the middle Orange River between Douglas and Prieska in the Northern Cape Province of South Africa, some 100km southwest of Douglas and some 200km from Kimberley. Milnex CC does not have any interest in secondary developments that may arise out of the authorisation of the proposed project.

Milnex CC is a specialist environmental consultancy with extensive experience in the mining industry which provides a holistic environmental management service, including environmental assessment and planning to ensure compliance with relevant environmental legislation. Milnex CC benefits from the pooled resources, diverse skills and experience in the environmental and mining field held by its team that has been actively involved in undertaking environmental studies for a wide variety of mining related projects throughout South Africa. The Milnex CC team has considerable experience in environmental impact assessment and environmental management, especially in the mining industry.

Percy Sehaole & Lizanne Esterhuizen have experience consulting in the environmental field. Their key focus is on environmental assessment, advice and management and ensuring compliance to legislation and guidelines. They are currently involved in undertaking EIAs for several projects across the country (refer to **Appendix 2** for CV).

### B. DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY

<b>Farm Name:</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Portion 7 of the farm Lanyon Vale 376</li> <li>2) A certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376</li> <li>3) Portion 11 (De Hoek) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376</li> <li>4) Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376</li> <li>5) The Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376</li> <li>6) Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376</li> </ol>
<b>Application area (Ha)</b>	6435.8668 hectares

<b>Magisterial district:</b>	Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality
<b>Local Municipality</b>	Siyathemba Local Municipality
<b>Registration Division</b>	Hay
<b>Distance and direction from nearest town</b>	The area applied for is located along the North Bank of the middle Orange River between Douglas and Prieska in the Northern Cape Province of South Africa, some 100km southwest of Douglas and some 200km from Kimberley.
<b>21 digit Surveyor General Code for each farm portion</b>	1) C03100000000037600007 2) C03100000000037600011 3) C03100000000037600014 4) C03100000000037600000 5) C03100000000037600000 6) C03100000000037600000
<b>Minerals Applied for</b>	Diamonds Alluvial (DA) Diamonds General (D) Diamonds (DIA) Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK)

iii. Farm co-ordinates

Farms		Longitude	Latitude
	0	23° 12' 6.546" E	29° 18' 29.917" S
	1	23° 12' 1.873" E	29° 18' 25.536" S
	2	23° 11' 46.284" E	29° 18' 6.913" S
	3	23° 12' 0.303" E	29° 14' 30.191" S
	4	23° 9' 19.858" E	29° 16' 14.205" S
	5	23° 8' 9.964" E	29° 16' 58.663" S
	6	23° 9' 29.916" E	29° 19' 20.892" S
	7	23° 9' 22.140" E	29° 18' 44.064" S
	8	23° 9' 49.970" E	29° 18' 44.748" S
	9	23° 10' 11.820" E	29° 18' 40.176" S
1) Portion 7 of the farm Lanyon Vale 376	10	23° 10' 35.112" E	29° 18' 8.640" S
2) A certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376	11	23° 10' 54.804" E	29° 18' 29.736" S
3) Portion 11 (De Hoek) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376	12	23° 11' 9.672" E	29° 18' 59.904" S
4) Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376	13	23° 10' 58.188" E	29° 19' 12.756" S
5) The Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376	14	23° 11' 8.304" E	29° 19' 25.284" S
6) Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376	15	23° 11' 11.112" E	29° 19' 26.436" S
	16	23° 11' 38.029" E	29° 18' 36.486" S
	17	23° 11' 49.823" E	29° 18' 48.902" S
	18	23° 11' 50.147" E	29° 18' 49.204" S
	19	23° 11' 55.785" E	29° 18' 54.450" S
	20	23° 11' 43.270" E	29° 19' 47.203" S
	21	23° 11' 38.317" E	29° 19' 44.827" S
	22	23° 11' 29.404" E	29° 19' 40.553" S
	23	23° 11' 3.601" E	29° 20' 26.813" S
	24	23° 10' 50.370" E	29° 20' 41.251" S
	25	23° 10' 23.346" E	29° 20' 58.843" S
	26	23° 10' 35.216" E	29° 21' 19.953" S

Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

	27	23° 9' 13.614" E	29° 21' 21.821" S
	28	23° 9' 15.990" E	29° 21' 11.723" S
	29	23° 9' 17.232" E	29° 20' 51.236" S
	30	23° 7' 59.724" E	29° 20' 36.984" S
	31	23° 7' 15.510" E	29° 20' 47.010" S
	32	23° 7' 17.267" E	29° 20' 56.830" S
	33	23° 7' 17.440" E	29° 21' 4.768" S
	34	23° 6' 33.381" E	29° 21' 33.149" S
	35	23° 6' 24.409" E	29° 21' 24.977" S
	36	23° 3' 33.757" E	29° 18' 50.129" S
	37	23° 3' 40.846" E	29° 21' 52.574" S
	38	23° 2' 56.632" E	29° 22' 42.903" S
	39	23° 6' 43.522" E	29° 23' 59.063" S
40	23° 7' 12.208" E	29° 24' 9.085" S	

**C. LOCALITY MAP**

(show nearest town, scale not smaller than 1:250000 attached as **Appendix 3**).

A Locality map is attached in **Appendix 3** and on figure 1 below.

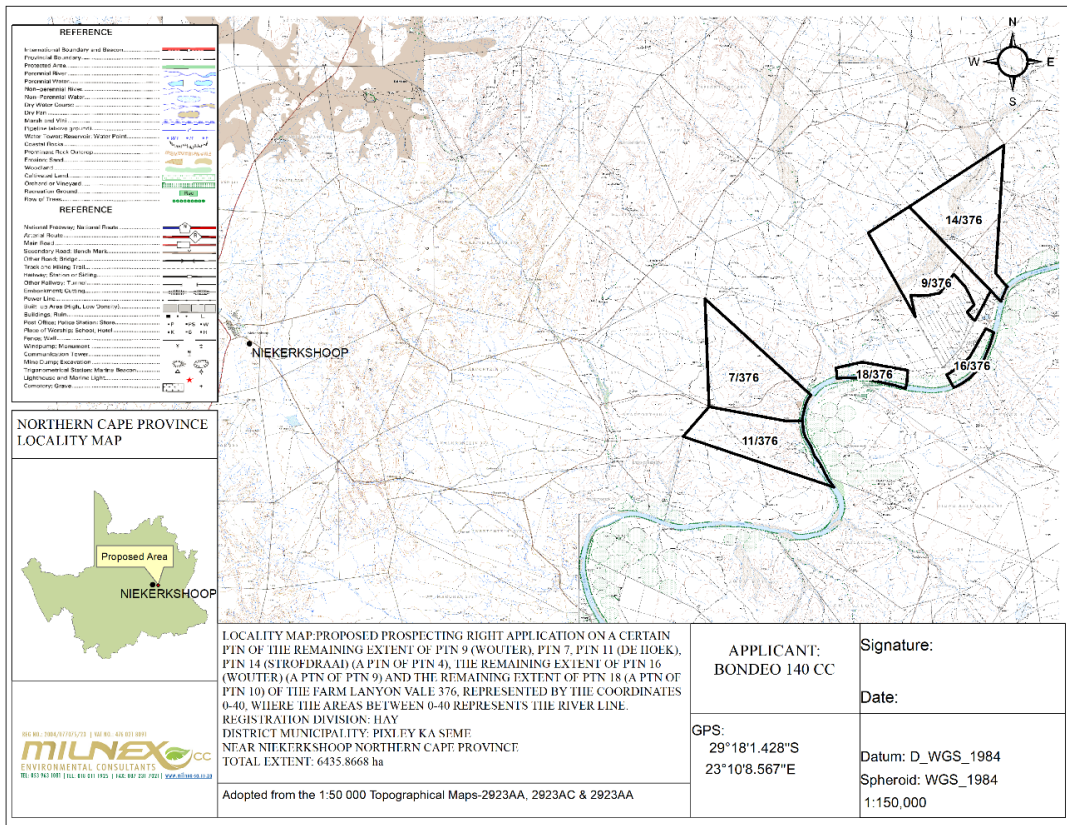


Figure 1: Locality Map



Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

Refer to Site Plan included within **Appendix 4**.

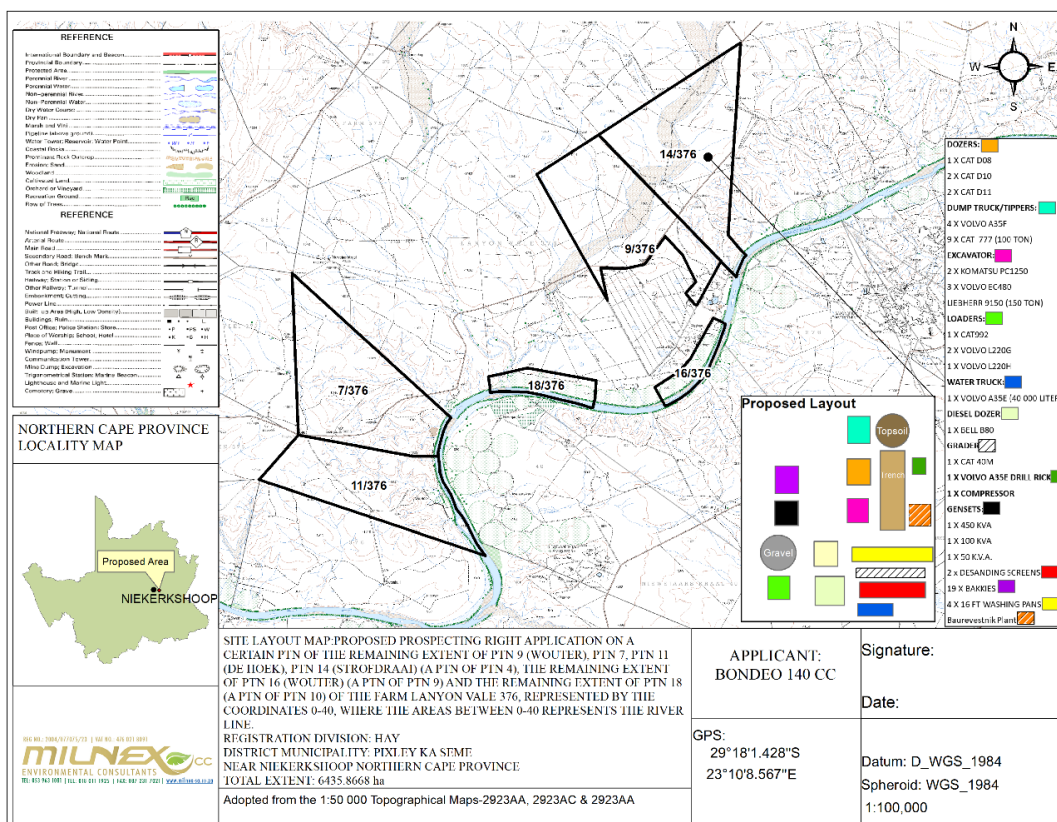


Figure 2: Site Plan

**D. DESCRIPTION OF THE SCOPE OF THE PROPOSED OVERALL ACTIVITY.**

**i) LISTED AND SPECIFIED ACTIVITIES**

<p><b>Description of the overall activity. (Indicate Mining Right, Mining Permit, Prospecting right, Bulk Sampling, Production Right, Exploration Right, Reconnaissance permit, Technical co-operation permit, Additional listed activity)</b></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) <b>Listing notice 1 GNR327: Activity 9:</b> The development of infrastructure exceeding 1000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of water or storm water— (i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or (ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more;</li> <li>2) <b>Listing notice 1 GNR 327: Activity 10:</b> The development and related operation of infrastructure exceeding 1 000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of sewage, effluent, process water, waste water, return water, industrial discharge or slimes – (i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or (ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more;</li> <li>3) <b>Listing Notice 1: GNR 327, Activity 19:</b> <i>The infilling or depositing of any material of more than 10 cubic metres into, or the dredging, excavation, removal or moving of soil, sand, shells, shell grit, pebbles or rock of more than 10 cubic metres from:</i> (i) a watercourse;</li> <li>4) <b>Listing Notice 1, GNR 327, Activity 20:</b> “Any activity including the operation of that activity which requires a prospecting right in terms of section 16 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including— (a) associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks, directly related to prospecting of a mineral resource; or [including activities for which an exemption has been issued</li> </ol>
--	--

	<p>in terms of section 106 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)] (b) the primary processing of a petroleum resource including winning, extraction, classifying, concentrating or water removal; –</p> <p>5) <b>Listing Notice 2, GNR 325, Activity 15:</b>"The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more, of indigenous vegetation."</p> <p>6) <b>Listing Notice 2, GNR 325, Activity 19:</b> "The removal and disposal of minerals contemplated in terms of section 20 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including— (a) associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks, directly related to prospecting of a mineral resource or (b) [including activities for which an exemption has been issued in terms of section 106 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)] the primary processing of a mineral resource including winning, extraction, classifying, concentrating, crushing, screening or washing;</p> <p>7) <b>Listing Notice 3: GNR 324, Activity 12 (g):</b> Northern Cape; The clearance of an area of 300 square metres or more of indigenous vegetation; ii) Within critical biodiversity areas identified in bioregional plans;</p> <p>8) <b>NEM:WA 59 of 2008: Residue stockpiles or residue deposits, Category A: (15)</b> The establishment or reclamation of a residue stockpile or residue deposit resulting from activities which require a prospecting right or mining permit, in terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002).</p> <p>Prospecting right for the prospecting of <b>Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) &amp; Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK)</b> including associated infrastructure, structure and earthworks.</p>
--	--

<b>NAME OF ACTIVITY</b>  <b>(E.g. For prospecting - drill site, site camp, ablution facility, accommodation, equipment storage, sample storage, site office, access route etc...etc...etc</b> <b>E.g. for mining,- excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablution, stores, workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etc...etc...etc.)</b>	<b>Aerial extent of the Activity</b> <b>Ha or m<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>LISTED ACTIVITY</b>  (Mark with an <b>X</b> where applicable or affected).	<b>APPLICABLE LISTING NOTICE</b>  <b>(GNR 324, GNR 325 or GNR 326)</b>	<b>WASTE MANAGEMENT AUTHORISATION</b>  (Indicate whether an authorisation is required in terms of the Waste Management Act) <b>(Mark with an X)</b>
<b>Bulk transportation of water or storm water:</b> <b><u>BULK SAMPLING:</u></b> 6435.8668 Ha – Drilling of 1000 boreholes 5m x 5m x 0.5 -5m (150 pits), 200m x 100m x 0.5 - 5m (possible max depth of 8m) (10-15 trenches)  <b>Listing notice 1 GNR327: Activity 9:</b> The development of infrastructure exceeding 1000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of water or storm water— (i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or (ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more;	Random indigenous vegetation clearance of over a 6435.8668 hectares area.	X	Listing notice 1 GNR327: Activity 9	
<b>Bulk transportation of sewage, effluent, process water, waste water, return water, industrial discharge or slimes:</b> <b><u>BULK SAMPLING:</u></b> 6435.8668 Ha – Drilling of 1000 boreholes 5m x 5m x 0.5 -5m (150 pits), 200m x 100m x 0.5 - 5m (possible max depth of 8m) (10-15 trenches)  <b>Listing notice 1 GNR 327: Activity 10:</b> The development and related operation of infrastructure exceeding 1 000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of sewage, effluent, process water, waste water, return water, industrial discharge or slimes – (i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or (ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more;	Random indigenous vegetation clearance of over a 6435.8668 hectares area.	X	Listing notice 1 GNR 327: Activity 10	
<b>Prospecting Right:</b> <b><u>BULK SAMPLING:</u></b> 6435.8668 Ha – Drilling of 1000 boreholes 5m x 5m x 0.5 -5m (150 pits), 200m x 100m x 0.5 - 5m (possible max depth of 8m) (10-15 trenches)	6435.8668 Ha - Total hectares to be disturbed Concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate.	X	Listing Notice 1: GNR 327, Activity 19	-



<p><b>Listing Notice 1: GNR 327, Activity 19:</b> <i>The infilling or depositing of any material of more than 10 cubic metres into, or the dredging, excavation, removal or moving of soil, sand, shells, shell grit, pebbles or rock of more than 10 cubic metres from:</i></p> <p>(i) a watercourse;</p>				
<p><b>Prospecting Right:</b>  <b><u>BULK SAMPLING:</u></b>          6435.8668 Ha –          Drilling of 1000 boreholes          5m x 5m x 0.5 -5m (150 pits),          200m x 100m x 0.5 - 5m (possible max depth of 8m) (10-15 trenches)</p> <p><b>4 x 16 feet washing pan</b> Given the extent of the area and the grades expected to be very low, the applicant shall have to process bulk samples of approximately 500 000 tons.</p> <p><b>Listing Notice 1, GNR 325, Activity 20:</b> “Any activity including the operation of that activity which requires a prospecting right in terms of section 16 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including—          (a) associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks, directly related to prospecting of a mineral resource; or [including activities for which an exemption has been issued in terms of section 106 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)]          (b) the primary processing of a petroleum resource including winning, extraction, classifying, concentrating or water removal</p>	<p>6435.8668 Ha Total hectares to be disturbed</p>	<p>X</p>	<p>Listing Notice 1, GNR 327, Activity 20:</p>	<p>-</p>
<p><b>Clearance of indigenous vegetation:</b>  <b><u>BULK SAMPLING:</u></b>          6435.8668 Ha –          Drilling of 1000 boreholes          5m x 5m x 0.5 -5m (150 pits),          200m x 100m x 0.5 - 5m (possible max depth of 8m) (10-15 trenches)</p> <p><b>Listing Notice GNR 325, Activity 15:</b>          "The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more, of indigenous vegetation." – Random indigenous vegetation clearance of over a 6435.8668 hectares area.</p>	<p>6435.8668 Ha Total hectares to be disturbed Concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate.</p>	<p>X</p>	<p>Listing Notice 2, GNR 325, Activity 15</p>	<p>-</p>

<p><b>Prospecting:</b></p> <p><b><u>BULK SAMPLING:</u></b> 6435.8668 Ha – Drilling of 1000 boreholes 5m x 5m x 0.5 -5m (150 pits), 200m x 100m x 0.5 - 5m (possible max depth of 8m) (10-15 trenches)</p> <p><b>Listing Notice GNR 325, Activity 19:</b> “The removal and disposal of minerals contemplated in terms of section 20 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including— (a) associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks, directly related to prospecting of a mineral resource [,]; or (b) [including activities for which an exemption has been issued in terms of section 106 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)] the primary processing of a mineral resource including winning, extraction, classifying, concentrating, crushing, screening or washing</p>	6435.8668 Ha Total hectares to be disturbed	X	Listing Notice 2, GNR 325, Activity 19:	
<p><b>Clearance of indigenous vegetation:</b></p> <p><b><u>BULK SAMPLING:</u></b> 6435.8668 Ha – Drilling of 1000 boreholes 5m x 5m x 0.5 -5m (150 pits), 200m x 100m x 0.5 - 5m (possible max depth of 8m) (10-15 trenches)</p> <p><b>Listing Notice 3: GNR 324, Activity 12 (g):</b> Northern Cape; The clearance of an area of 300 square metres or more of indigenous vegetation; ii) Within critical biodiversity areas identified in bioregional plans;</p>	Random indigenous vegetation clearance of over a 6435.8668 hectares area.	X	Listing Notice 3: GNR 324, Activity 12 (g):	
<p><b>Residue stockpiles or residue deposits:</b> The establishment or reclamation of a residue stockpile or residue deposit resulting from activities which require a prospecting right or mining permit, in terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002).</p>		X	<b>NEM:WA 59 of 2008</b> <b>Category A: (15)</b>	

ii) **DESCRIPTION OF THE ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES AND INFRASTRUCTURE RELATED TO THE DEVELOPMENT**

(Describe Methodology or technology to be employed, and for a linear activity, a description of the route of the activity)

**Bondeo 140 CC** has embarked on a process for applying for a Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape. These farms are preferred due to the sites expected mineral resources. **Bondeo 140 CC** requires a prospecting right in terms of NEMA and the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act to mine Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) within the Siyathemba Local Municipality, Northern Cape Province (refer to a locality map attached in **Appendix 3**).

**A DESCRIPTION OF HOW THE MINERAL RESOURCE AND MINERAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE PROSPECTING AREA WILL BE DETERMINED**

**PHASE 1 - SITE VISIT**

The applicant will appoint Schalk Steyn, representative of the mineral consultants and as appointed geologist to conduct the site visit with him. It is foreseen that more than one site visit will be conducted. The purpose of the site visit shall be to familiarize the parties of the area including the topography and the general geology before invasive prospecting activities shall be commenced with.

During the site visit, the applicant shall assess the roads, the infrastructure that may be used and if it will be necessary to construct any infrastructure needed for the prospecting activities. From a site visit much more details shall be obtained about the process to be followed to properly conduct the prospecting activities than from near desktop studies.

Site visit shall assist the applicant to make a better assessment of the prospecting work to be done during the respective phases where the prospecting work shall be commenced with and what additional equipment may be required to properly conduct the prospecting activities.

The site visit shall also assist the applicant to assess prospecting information of earlier prospecting activities. During this process the applicant shall also review all documentation that has received in relation to the geology of the area.

A site visit will be done within 90 days after the prospecting right was executed.

**PHASE 2 - DESKTOP STUDIES**

Desktops studies would be undertaken after the site visit was done to determine the target areas including the identification of any infrastructure to be built and any potential problems that may need to be addressed during the prospecting activities.

Both these two phases will be Non-Invasive and restricted to a desktop study which will include literature survey, Interpretation of aerial photographs, satellite images and ground validation of targets.

During the desktop studies the applicant with the appointed geologist shall study all available geological information and historical data about the previous prospecting and mining activities.

It is hope that for the desktop studies, a preliminary analysis of the operating environment shall be obtained. The desktop studies may improve in project efficiency and reduced the cost by providing a clearer understanding of the challenges the prospecting activities may entail.

The desktop studies shall be finalized by the compilation and the analysis of pre-existing relevant data. The preliminary operating areas shall be identified for these studies. A working document shall be drafted by the geologist after the finalization of the desktop studies.

### **PHASE 3 - DRILLING**

The applicant is the owner of a Volvo drilling machine. The applicant has appointed Lyndon de Meillon as geology who will assist with the prospecting activities.

It is estimated that 1000 holes shall be drilled by the applicant. The drilling shall be done in accordance with procedures and protocols drawn up by Lyndon de Meillon, the appointed geologist. Drilling shall be carried out by using a Volvo drilling machine. The applicant is the owner of this drill. Samples representing every one to two meters advance shall be collected for observation. The drill will be under constant observation to determine the depths estimates of the lithological contacts. Each sample shall be log by the geologist based upon macroscopic examination of the drill cuttings on a meter basis. The results shall be noted in a field note book. Observations in the field shall include grain size, color, degree of roundness (quartzite and chert clasts) and end-of-hole lithology bedrock. These logs will later be summarized and the gravel deposit types will be assigned based upon their stratigraphic and sedimentological characteristics. All drill hole positions will be surveyed and elevated. Drilling will commence on the areas which was identified in the Technical Report that were not drilled before and the areas that the geologist is of the opinion the geology must be informed.

In this regard the Technical Report stipulates that only the remaining portion of portion 9 and portion 16 (portion of portion 9) of the farm Wouterspan has been drilled and that can be used as representative. The applicant shall thus comment with its' drilling activities on the other portions as applied for. It is expected that a sufficient confidence level of drilling completed shall be where holes are drilled on the grid of 100 x 50 meter to classify the resource as a indicated resource.

It is estimated that the drilling will take approximately a year after the prospecting right has been executed and the EMP approved.

The drilling shall be conducted as phase 3.

### **Bulk Sampling**

All gravel deposits as indicated in the Technical Report and gravel deposits to be found during the drilling to be conducted, shall not be indicative of the grade of the diamonds. Because hereof the applicant shall have to do a bulk sampling exercise. Bulk samples shall have to be taken to determine the average sample grade.

By taking of the bulk samples, the applicant foresees to determine the grade of the diamond deposits as the number of carats contained in 100 tons (cpht) of gravel and to determine the average diamond sizes.

The applicant has extensive experience in conducting prospecting and mining activities between Douglas and Prieska on properties adjacent to the Orange River. During these activities the applicant has found that the size of valued distribution from the stone to stone is erratic and is possible that the majority of the value of a parcel as mined, is tribute to a single stone. Diamond distribution patterns of alluvial deposits varies to such a nature that there is no repeatability of sample results even from adjacent samples.

Alluvial diamond deposits can only be sampled through bulk sampling comprising thousands of cubic meters of gravel.

The applicant shall after the drilling exercise commence with bulk sampling activities. Given the extent of the area and the grades expected to be very low, the applicant shall have to process bulk samples of approximately 500 000 tons.

The appointed geologist shall advise where the samples shall be taken. Bulk samples shall not be taken along a systematic grid as in the case of drilling.

As the anticipated mining plan for the properties will be based on high volumes (low grades), the bulk samples shall have to address average recovery.

As indicated, the bulk sampling exercise has to be conducted to determine the grades (cpht), the diamond size distribution and thereafter to sell the diamonds to determine the diamond values.

In the bulk sampling exercise the information as contained in the technical report will be evaluated and used to assist in this process. In the report the resource statement is given as at 28 February 2008, 31 August 2009 and 30 November 2010. As the mine at that stage was put on care and maintenance the gravel volumes as at 15 May 2013 was named the same as for November 2010.

The plant/ bulk sampling technique shall be that of a typical South African alluvial diamond mining operation. The method is a strip mining process with oversize material and tailings recovered from the plant be used as backfill material prior to final rehabilitation. Gravels are excavated, loaded and transported to the treatment facility using dump trucks.

The bulk sampling operation will be conducted using a fleet of conventional open pit mining equipment comprising of dump trucks supported by appropriate excavators and front-end- loaders. All equipment is planned to be diesel driven.

Before excavation commences vegetation shall be cleared from the proposed bulk sampling block. These shall be done as per environmental regulations. Top soil will then be removed and stored separately for later used for rehabilitation.

The bulk samples will be made in the form of boxcuts the dimensions of these individual boxcuts will on average be 50m wide x 200m long.

It is estimated that the bulk samples will be between 0.5m – 8m in depth. Only in certain circumstances will the bulk samples be 8m in depth. It is envisaged that it will be more likely 5 meters.

Gravel will be removed by excavators and will be loaded directly into dump trucks. Ore will be hauled to the screening plant. The material will be screened where after the screened material will be moved to the processing plant where the gravel will be processed. Concentrate will be removed to the sorting plant were the concentrate will be sorted.

It is estimated that the bulk sampling shall take approximately 2 years.

Various recovery methods are considered. The screened gravel will be concentrated to eliminate oversize and undersize clasts as well as material which is to light or too heavy to contain diamonds. This will be followed by a physical separation of diamonds.

Screening plants to be employed shall either be static or vibrating single or double deck systems to remove oversize and undersize material to allow a sized material stream to be fed to the processing and the concentration plant.

The applicant is the owner of a number of different concentrating plants. These are dense media separation (“DMS”) plant, rotary pans and bouvestnik x-ray plants.

The applicant shall either make use of rotary pans or one of his bouvestnik bulk x-ray plants.

Bouvestnik plants effectively concentrate and recover diamonds, combining processing and final recovery units into a single step. These plants are designed to make diamond detection precise and efficient.

#### Calculations

It is planned that 1000 boreholes will be drilled (it may be less depending on the results). The diameter of the borehole to be drilled will not be bigger than 150mm.

- $150\text{mm} / 1000 = 0.15\text{m}$  (from mm to m)
- $0.15\text{m} / 10\ 000 = 0.000015\text{ha}$  (from m to ha)
- $0.000015\text{ha} \times 1000 \text{ boreholes} = 0.015\text{ha}$  (total area of vegetation clearance for boreholes in ha)

The total vegetation clearance for 1000 boreholes is 0.015ha for 12 months.

#### **PHASE 4 - PITTING**

Invasive prospecting pits may be digged, depending on the results obtained from the previous phases if deemed necessary by the appointed geologist.

These pits will be positioned as determined by the geologist and after the geologist has assessed information obtained from the earlier prospecting activities.

A trial pit / test pit or inspection pit investigation is a highly effective way of obtaining data on the sub surface soil and rock conditions which underlie a prospecting sight. It allows for the various soils and rock types to be locked, the soil to be sampled and a preliminary assessment to be made.

Pits shall be digged, locked, sampled and backfilled.

To digged the pits, the applicant shall make use of the systems of Lyndon de Meillon, the appointed geologist.

The applicant shall at the end of the pitting process have locked the pits with the following information:

- A description of the soil and rock types from ground level to the base of the pits;
- Record of rock head depth and refusal depth, a list of where the samples will be taken, a record of where ground water seepage will be recorded;
- A general note of the geologist and conditions in the vicinity of the test pit.

#### Calculations

It is planned that 150 pits will be dug (it may be less depending on the results) at an extent of 5m (length) x 5m (breadth) x 0.5m – 5m (depth).

- 150 pits will be dug in 6 months
- Total area to be disturbed in 6 months = 150 pits x (5m x 5m) / 10 000 = 0.375 Ha

#### **PHASE 5 - TRENCHES**

Due to nature of the alluvial diamond deposit, samples are not taken for assay as would be normal practice to evaluate hard rock precious or base-metal prospects. The diamond distribution pattern grade of alluvial diamonds is also of such a nature that there is no repeatability of sample results, even from adjacent samples.

#### **BULK SAMPLING**

All gravel deposits as indicated in the Technical Report and gravel deposits to be found during the drilling to be conducted, shall not be indicative of the grade of the diamonds. Because hereof the applicant shall have to do a bulk sampling exercise. Bulk samples shall have to be taken to determine the average sample grade.

By taking of the bulk samples, the applicant foresees to determine the grade of the diamond deposits as the number of carats contained in 100 tons (cpht) of gravel and to determine the average diamond sizes.

The applicant has extensive experience in conducting prospecting and mining activities between Douglas and Prieska on properties adjacent to the Orange River. During these activities the applicant has found that the size of valued distribution from stone to stone is erratic and is possible that the majority of the value of a parcel as mined, is tribute to a single stone. Diamond distribution patterns of alluvial deposits varies to such a nature that there is no repeatability of sample results even from adjacent samples.

Alluvial diamond deposits can only be sampled through bulk sampling comprising thousands of cubic meters of gravel.

The applicant shall after the drilling and pitting exercise commence with bulk sampling activities. Given the extent of the area and the grades expected to be very low, the applicant shall have to process bulk samples of approximately 500 000 tons.

The appointed geologist shall advise where the samples shall be taken. Bulk samples shall not be taken along a systematic grid as in the case of drilling.

As the anticipated mining plan for the properties will be based on high volumes (low grades), the bulk samples shall have to address average recovery.

As indicated, the bulk sampling exercise has to be conducted to determine the grades (cpht), the diamond size distribution and thereafter to sell the diamonds to determine the diamond values.

In the bulk sampling exercise the information as contained in the technical report will be evaluated and used to assist in this process. In the report the resource statement is given as at 28 February 2008, 31 August 2009 and 30 November 2010. As the mine at that stage was put on care and maintenance the gravel volumes as at 15 May 2013 was named the same as for November 2010.

The plant/ bulk sampling technique shall be that of a typical South African alluvial diamond mining operation. The method is a strip mining process with oversize material and tailings recovered from the plant be used as backfill material prior to final rehabilitation. Gravels are excavated, loaded and transported to the treatment facility using dump trucks.

The bulk sampling operation will be conducted using a fleet of conventional open pit mining equipment comprising of dump trucks supported by appropriate excavators and front-end loaders. All equipment is planned to be diesel driven.

Before excavation commences vegetation shall be cleared from the proposed bulk sampling block. These shall be done as per environmental regulations. Top soil will then be removed and stored separately for later used for rehabilitation.

The bulk samples will be made in the form of boxcuts the dimensions of these individual boxcuts will on average be 50m wide x 200m long.

It is estimated that the bulk samples will be between 0.5m – 8m in depth. Only in certain circumstances will the bulk samples be 8m in depth. It is envisaged that it will be more likely 5 meters.

Gravel will be removed by excavators and will be loaded directly into dump trucks. Ore will be hauled to the screening plant. The material will be screened where after the screened material will be moved to the processing plant where the gravel will be processed. Concentrate will be moved to the sorting plant where the concentrate will be sorted.

It is estimated that the bulk sampling shall take approximately 2 years.

Various recovery methods are considered. The screened gravel will be concentrated to eliminate oversize and undersize clasts as well as material which is too light or too heavy to contain diamonds. This will be followed by a physical separation of diamonds.

Screening plants to be employed shall either be static or vibrating single or double deck systems to remove oversize and undersize material to allow a sized material stream to be fed to the processing and the concentration plant.

The applicant is the owner of a number of different plants. These are dense media separation (“DMS”) plant, rotary pans and bourestnik x-ray plants.

The applicant shall either make use of rotary pans or one of his bourestnik bulk x-ray plants.

Bourestnik plants effectively concentrate and recover diamonds, combining processing and final recovery units into a single step. These plants are designed to make diamond detection precise and efficient.

It is estimated that trenching will take approximately 24 months.

**Calculations**

It is planned that 10-15 trenches will be dug (it may be less depending on the results) at an extent of 200m (length) x 100m (breadth) x 0.5m - 5m (depth).

- (15 trenches / 24 months) x 12 months = 7.5 trenches dug per year
- Total area to be disturbed per year = 7.5 trenches x (200m x 100m) / 10 000 = 15 Ha disturbed for 12 months
- Total area disturbed for 24 months = 15 trenches x (200m x 100m) / 10 000 = 30 Ha disturbed

**PHASE 6: CONSOLIDATION AND INTERPRETATION OF RESULTS DATA**

The prospecting activities will be conducted to determine an inferred diamond resource and an indicated diamond resource. An inferred diamond resource has a lower level of confidence than that applying to an indicated diamond resource. The inferred resource indication shall be where the geological and or grade continuity could not be confidently interpreted. It cannot be assumed that an inferred resource will necessarily be upgraded to an indicated resource. Such a resource is normally also not sufficient to enable an evaluation of economic viability.

To obtain an indicated resource the confidence level of information obtained from the prospecting will have to be sufficient for the information to be applied to mine design, mine planning to enable an evaluation of economic viability.

The project geologist, Lyndon de Meillon, shall monitor the program and consolidate and process the data and amend the program depending on the results received after each phase of prospecting. The DMR shall be updated of any amendments made. This shall be a continuous process throughout the prospecting work program.

Each physical phase of prospecting shall be followed by desktop studies involving interpretation and modeling of all data gathered. These studies will determine the manner in which the work programme is to be proceeded with in terms of the activity, quantity, resources, expenditure and duration.

A GIS data base will be constructed capturing all the exploration data.

All data shall be consolidated and processed to determine the diamond bearing resource on the property.

**Water uses:**

Water uses under section 21 a-k of the NWA may be triggered. When needed WULA must be lodged with the department of Water & Sanitation (DWS).

**Table 1:** Water Use Pan Size specifications for Alluvial Diamond Mining (DWS NC & FS, 2001).

Pan size	Water/hour (m <sup>3</sup> )	Water/day(m <sup>3</sup> )	Gravel/hour (tons)	Gravel/day (ton)
16	17	170	60	600

Since 4 x 16 feet washing pans will be used, the amount of water for the pans will be 68 000 L/hour from which 30% is re-used.

**Ablution**

Chemical toilets shall be used, no french drains and pits shall be permitted.

**Storage of dangerous goods**

During the prospecting activities, limited quantities of diesel and fuel, oil and lubricants will be stored on site. These goods should be placed in a bunded area one and a half times the volume of the total amount of goods to be stored.



**Prospecting activities and phases**

Please find the Prospecting Work Programme attached as **Appendix 8**.

**E. POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT**

(a description of the policy and legislative context within which the development is located and an explanation of how the proposed development complies with and responds to the legislation and policy context;)

<b>Title of legislation, policy or guideline:</b>	<b>Administering authority:</b>	<b>Promulgation Date:</b>
National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998 as amended.	Department of Environmental Affairs	27 November 1998
Constitution of South Africa Act 108 of 1996	National	18 December 1996
The National Heritage Resources Act (Act No. 25 of 1999)	SAHRA	1999
Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act No. 28 of 2002)	Department of Mineral Resources & Energy (DMRE)	2002
National Infrastructure Plan	National	
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act No. 10 of 2004	Department of Environmental Affairs	7 June 2004
National Environmental Management Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)	National & Provincial	1 July 2009
EIA regulations under NEMA	Department of Environmental Affairs	14 December 2014
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act No. 43 of 1983)	Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries	1 June 1984
National Environmental Management Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004).	National and Provincial	11 September 2004
National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998).	National	20 August 1998
Northern Cape Province Growth and Development Strategy	Provincial	11 August 2013
National Forest Act (Act 84 of 1998) (NFA)	National	30 October 1998
National Veld & Forest Fires Act (Act 101 of 1998)	National	27 November 1998
Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP)	Municipal	
Siyathemba Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP)	Municipal	

## Policy and Legislative Context

<b>APPLICABLE LEGISLATION AND GUIDELINES USED TO COMPILE THE REPORT</b> (a description of the policy and legislative context within which the development is proposed including an identification of all legislation, policies, plans, guidelines, spatial tools, municipal development planning frameworks and instruments that are applicable to this activity and are to be considered in the assessment process)	<b>REFERENCE WHERE APPLIED</b>	<b>HOW DOES THIS DEVELOPMENT COMPLY WITH AND RESPOND TO THE LEGISLATION AND POLICY CONTEXT.</b>  (E.g. In terms of the National Water Act a Water Use License has/ has not been applied for)
<b>The Constitution of South Africa (Act No. 108 of 1996)</b>		The Constitution is the supreme law of the Republic and all law and conduct must be consistent with the Constitution. The Chapter on the Bill of Rights contains a number of provisions, which are relevant to securing the protection of the environment. Section 24 states that “everyone has the right to (a) an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being and (b) to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that – (i) prevent pollution and ecological degradation; (ii) promote conservation; and (iii) secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development. The Constitution therefore, compels government to give effect to the people’s environmental right and places government under a legal duty to act as a responsible custodian of the countries environment. It compels government to pass legislation and use other measures to protect the environment, to prevent pollution and ecological degradation, promote conservation and secure sustainable development.
<b>The National Environmental Management Act (Act No. 107 of 1998)</b>	S24(1) of NEMA S28(1) of NEMA	NEMA provides for co-operative governance by establishing principles and procedures for decision-makers on matters affecting the environment. An important function of the Act is to serve as an enabling Act for the promulgation of legislation to effectively address integrated environmental management. Some of the principles in the Act are accountability; affordability; cradle to grave management; equity; integration; open information; polluter pays; subsidiary; waste avoidance and minimisation; co-operative governance; sustainable development; and environmental protection and justice.  The mandate for EIA lays with the National Environmental Management Act (107 of 1998) and the EIA Regulations No. 982, 983, 984, and 985 promulgated in terms of Section 24 of NEMA. The EIA Regulations determine that an Environmental Authorisation is required for certain listed activities, which might have a detrimental effect on the environment. This EIA was triggered by activity 21, 24(ii) and 27 listed in Regulation R983, which requires a ‘basic assessment process.’
<b>The National Water Act (Act No. 36 of 1998)</b>	S21	Sustainability and equity are identified as central guiding principles in the protection, use, development, conservation, management and control of water resources. The intention of the Act is to promote the equitable access to water and the sustainable use of water, redress past racial and gender discrimination, and facilitate

		<p>economic and social development. The Act provides the rights of access to basic water supply and sanitation, and environmentally, it provides for the protection of aquatic and associated ecosystems, the reduction and prevention of pollution and degradation of water resources.</p> <p>As this Act is founded on the principle that National Government has overall responsibility for and authority over water resource management, including the equitable allocation and beneficial use of water in the public interest, a person can only be entitled to use water if the use is permissible under the Act. Chapter 4 of the Act lays the basis for regulating water use.</p>
<p><b>Management: Air Quality Act (Act No. 39 of 2004)</b></p>	<p>S21</p>	<p>The object of this Act is to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for the protection and enhancement of the quality of air in the Republic; the prevention of air pollution and ecological degradation; and securing ecologically sustainable development while promoting justifiable economic and social development.</p> <p>Regulations No. R248 (of 31 March 2010) promulgated in terms of Section 21(1) (a) of the National Environmental Management Act: Air Quality Act (39 of 2004) determine that an Atmospheric Emission License (AEL) is required for certain listed activities, which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a detrimental effect on the environment. The Regulation also sets out the minimum emission standards for the listed activities. It is not envisaged that an Atmospheric Emission License will be required for the proposed development.</p>
<p><b>The National Heritage Resources Act (Act No. 25 of 1999)</b></p>		<p>The Act aims to introduce an integrated and interactive system for the management of the heritage resources, to promote good government at all levels, and empower civil society to nurture and conserve heritage resources so that they may be bequeathed to future generations and to lay down principles for governing heritage resources management throughout the Republic. It also aims to establish the South African Heritage Resources Agency together with its Council to co-ordinate and promote the management of heritage resources, to set norms and maintain essential national standards and to protect heritage resources, to provide for the protection and management of conservation-worthy places and areas by local authorities, and to provide for matters connected therewith.</p> <p>The Act protects and manages certain categories of heritage resources in South Africa. For the purposes of the Heritage Resources Act, a "heritage resource" includes any place or object of cultural significance. In this regard the Act makes provision for a person undertaking an activity listed in Section 28 of the Act to notify the resources authority. The resources authority may request that a heritage impact assessment be conducted if there is reason to believe that heritage resources will be affected.</p>

<p><b>Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 85 of 1983)</b></p>		<p>The objective of the Act is to provide for control over the utilization of the natural agricultural resources of the Republic in order to promote the conservation of the soil, the water sources and the vegetation and the combating of weeds and invader plants; and for matters connected therewith.</p> <p>Consent may be required from the Department of Agriculture in order to confirm that the proposed development is not located on high potential agricultural land.</p>
<p><b>Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act No. 28 of 2002)</b></p>		<p>The Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act identifies the state as the official custodian of South Africa's Mineral and Petroleum Resources. Therefore all activities relating to the reconnaissance, prospecting rights, mining rights, mining permits and retention permits are regulated by the State.</p>
<p><b>National Infrastructure Plan</b></p>		<p>The National Government adopted a National Infrastructure Plan in 2012. With the plan they aim to transform the South African economic landscape while simultaneously creating significant numbers of new jobs, and strengthening the delivery of basic services.</p> <p>Government will over the three years from 2013/14 invest R827 billion in building and upgrading existing infrastructure.</p> <p>These investments will improve access by South Africans to healthcare facilities, schools, water, sanitation, housing and electrification. On the other hand, investments in the construction of ports, roads, railway systems, electricity plants, hospitals, schools and dams will contribute to faster economic growth.</p> <p>This mining activity will indirectly contribute to the growing of the South African economy by supplying SANRAL with material to build and upgrade road infrastructure.</p>
<p><b>National Forest Act 84 of 1998</b></p>		<p>The protection, sustainable management and use of forests and trees within South Africa are provided for under the National Forests Act (Act 84 of 1998).</p> <p><b>Prohibition on destruction of trees in natural forests</b></p> <p>(1) No person may -</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(a) cut, disturb, damage or destroy any indigenous tree in a natural forest; or</p>

		<p>(b) possess, collect, remove, transport, export, purchase, sell, donate or in any other manner acquire or dispose of any tree, or any forest product derived from a tree contemplated in paragraph (a), except in terms of-</p> <p>(i) a licence issued under subsection (4) or section 23; or</p> <p>(ii) an exemption from the provisions of this subsection published by the Minister in the <i>Gazette</i> on the advice of the Council.</p>
<b>National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003</b>		<p>This Act provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas representative of South Africa's biological diversity and its natural landscapes and seascapes. It also seeks to provide for the sustainable utilization of protected areas and to promote participation of local communities in the management of protected areas.</p>
<b>National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)</b>		<p>Section 24S of NEMA deals with the management of residue stockpiles and residue deposits and provides that Residue stockpiles and residue deposits must be deposited and managed in accordance with the provisions of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008), on any site demarcated for that purpose in the environmental management plan or environmental management programme in question</p> <p>The management of residue stockpiles and residue deposits must be done in accordance with any conditions set out and any identified measures in the environmental authorisation issued in terms of NEMA, an environmental management programme and a waste management licence issued in terms of NEMA (Regulation 3(2)).</p>
<b>National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 Of 2008) Regulations regarding the Planning &amp; Management of Residue Stockpiles &amp; Residue Deposits from a Prospecting, Mining, Exploration or Production Operation</b>		<p>The purpose of these Regulations is to regulate the planning and management of residue stockpiles and residue deposits from a prospecting, mining, exploration or production operation.</p>

## **F. NEED AND DESIRABILITY OF THE PROPOSED ACTIVITIES.**

(a motivation for the need and desirability for the proposed development, including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the preferred [location] development footprint within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report;).

Mining has played a vital role in the economy of South Africa for over 100 years. In 2015 the mining industry contributed R286 billion towards South African Gross Domestic Product (GDP) representing 7.1% of overall GDP. Mining is a significant contributor to employment in the nation, with 457 698 individuals directly employed by the sector in 2015. This represents just over 3% of all employed nationally. Diamond mining has 17 885 direct employees.

Diamonds, arguably the ultimate luxury mineral, comprise an intricate lattice of carbon atoms, a crystalline structure that makes them harder than any other form in nature. This characteristic makes diamonds not only popular in jewellery, but also desirable in high-tech cutting, grinding and polishing tools (Chamber of Mines, South Africa, 12:2016).

According to the Chamber of Mines the country's diamond sector is far from reaching the end of its life even though diamond mining has been taking place in South Africa for almost a century and a half. The primary sources of all of South Africa's diamonds are kimberlites in ancient, vertically dipping volcanic pipes most of which were located in the vicinity of the city of Kimberley and which were initially amenable to open-cast.

Economic growth - South Africa's total reserves remain some of the world's most valuable, with an estimated worth of R20.3-trillion. Overall, the country is estimated to have the world's fifth-largest mining sector in terms of GDP value.

It has the world's largest reserves of manganese and platinum group metals (PGMs), according to the [US Geological Survey](#), and among the largest reserves of gold, diamonds, chromite ore and vanadium.

With South Africa's economy built on gold and diamond mining, the sector is an important foreign exchange earner, with gold accounting for more than one-third of exports. In 2009, the country's diamond industry was the fourth largest in the world.

Mining is a cornerstone of the economy, making a significant contribution to economic activity, job creation and foreign exchange earnings. Mining and its related industries are critical to South Africa's socio-economic development.

## **G. A MOTIVATION FOR THE PREFERRED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT**

(-within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report;)

NB!! – This section is about the determination of the specific site layout and the location of infrastructure and activities on site, having taken into consideration the issues raised by interested and affected parties, and the consideration of alternatives to the initially proposed site layout.

### **Location of the site**

The location of the site is preferred due to the presence of shallow Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK). Access will be obtained from a gravel road off the R386 or R370.

As discussed in the previous section, based on outcomes of previous studies in the vicinity of the proposed site, the possibility to encounter high volumes of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape, were identified.

The site is largely covered in natural vegetation, some areas are used for cultivation and the Orange River borders the proposed area according to **Figure 17**.

Gravel roads, fencing, farmsteads, central pivot irrigation systems crop fields, and kraals were identified on site.

### **Preferred activity**

The prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) is the optimum preferred activity for the site. The shallow diamond deposits make the site ideal for Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) mining. The mine will provide significantly more job opportunities than what is providing currently.

## **H. A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS FOLLOWED TO REACH THE PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT**

(-within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report, including:)

### **i) Details of the development footprint alternatives considered;**

#### **• Consideration of alternatives**

The DEAT 2006 guidelines on 'assessment of alternatives and impacts' proposes the consideration of four types of alternatives namely, the no-go, site, activity, and technology alternatives. It is however, important to note that the regulation and guidelines specifically state that only 'feasible' and 'reasonable' alternatives should be explored. It also recognizes that the consideration of alternatives is an iterative process of feedback between the developer, the EAP and Interested and affected parties, which in some instances culminates in a single preferred project proposal. The following sections explore each type of alternative in relation to the proposed activity.

#### **• Location alternatives**

This alternative asks the question, if there is not, from an environmental perspective, a more suitable location for the proposed activity. No other properties have been secured by **Bondeo 140 CC** near Prieska area to potentially mine diamonds alluvial. Also, it is expected that the Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) been deposited on this farm and therefore the applicant would like to commence with their prospecting activities.

Land capability is the combination of soil suitability and climate factors. The proposed development falls within **Land in Class VII**; which has very severe limitations that makes it unsuited to cultivation and that restrict its use largely to grazing, woodland or wildlife.

- Restrictions are more severe than those for Class 6 because of one or more continuing limitations that cannot be corrected, such as:
  - Very steep slopes.
  - Erosion.
  - Shallow soil.
  - Stones.
  - Wet soil.
  - Salts or sodicity.
  - Unfavourable climate.
- Physical conditions are such that it is impractical to apply such pasture or range improvements as seeding, liming and fertilizing.
- Depending on soil characteristics and climate, land in Class 7 may be well or poorly suited to woodland.
- In unusual instances some occurrences may be used for special crops under unusual management practices. (AGIS, 2016)..

Refer to Land capability map attached as **Appendix 5 & figure 3 below**.







Based on the outcome of the desktop studies and site investigation, pits will be dug by an excavator for the purpose of soil sampling. If gravel is found, the applicant will determine the composition and quality of the gravel.

The applicant will proceed with this way of prospecting by means of the open cast/trenching method, simultaneously or after pitting depending on the information obtained from the earlier work done. The trenches will be dug to remove and wash the gravel. It will be washed by a 10-18 feet washing pan to determine diamond proceeds per 100 tons of gravel.

All data will be consolidated and processed to determine the diamond bearing resources on the property. This will be a continuous process throughout the prospecting work programme.

No feasible alternatives to the pitting and trenching method currently exists. Impacts associated with the prospecting operations will be managed through the implementation of a management plan, developed as part of the application for authorisation.

- **No-go alternative**

This alternative considers the option of 'do nothing' and maintaining the status quo. The description provided in section H of this report could be considered the baseline conditions (status quo) to persist should the no-go alternative be preferred. The site is currently zoned for agricultural land uses. Should the proposed activity not proceed, the site will remain unchanged.

- **Technology alternatives**

In terms of the technologies proposed, these have been chosen based on the long term success of their prospecting history. The prospecting activities proposed in the Prospecting Works Programme (**Appendix 9**) is dependent on the preceding phase as previously discussed, therefore no alternatives are indicated, but rather a phased approach of trusted prospecting techniques.

The preferred technology for the proposed mining activity, will be to drill boreholes, remove the diamond bearing gravel with an excavator, depositing it in the 10 – 18 feet rotary pan(s) to be washed and sorted. Please find the Prospecting Work Programme attached as **Appendix 9**.

### **Reverse Circulation Drilling (RC drilling)**

#### Drill Structure

RC drilling is usually a large piece of apparatus, that requires a lot of space, not just for the rig itself, but the supporting vehicles and the pit for collecting waste runoff.

The drill cutting is transferred to the surface inside drill rods, which are linked together to create a 'drill string'. Drill bits attached to the end of the hammer are made from tungsten-steel, and are usually around 13-20cm in diameter. These also have metal nodules attached at the end to allow cutting through particularly tough rock. Most RC drilling uses a dual-tube drill rods, with one tube inside another. The tubes inside overlap and provide a path for drilled rock from the ground to the surface. Inner tubes can be sealed together, meaning that the RC drill can sample up to very large depths, often around 500m.

Another type of RC drilling is 'centre sample' drilling. This is a modern variation, in which a central hammer, with a hollow centre, allows the sample to immediately enter the drill pipe, without the need to travel past the hammer (AZOMining, 2012)

#### Sample Extraction

The samples produced from RC drilling are dry chips of the drilled rock. To create the sample, the hammer acts like a pneumatic piston and pushes a tungsten-steel drill bit on to the rock, breaking it up. Before the drill bit hits the rock, it is dried out using an air compressor, so that the rock chips are dry at the surface.

Water is often used down the hole to cool the drill bit and reduce dust, as well as assisting with the transportation of sample bits to the surface. Air is blown down the drill rods to create a pressure difference, allowing the sample chips and water to rise through the inner tube. The sample then reaches a bell at ground level, which transports the sample to a cyclone where it dries out and is deposited into sacks (AZOMining, 2012).

Applications

RC drilling is a technique used in most stages of mine development.

As it is cheaper than diamond core drilling, it is often used in first stage exploration mining to delineate a potentially extractable ore body. It is also preferable to RAB or air-core drilling when trying to reach great depths, but RC drilling is slower and more expensive than either of these two methods.

RC drilling is also consistently used during in-pit grade control and the development stage of an ore body (AZOMining, 2012).

Pros & Cons of the alternative RC drilling

Advantages	Disadvantages
Direct drilling cost reductions in the range of 25% to 40%.	Less geological information from sample.
Faster completion of drill programs with quicker delivery of results.	Holes can deviate (Spiral Stabiliser Subs keep holes straighter)
Reduced man-hours at the drill with decreased exposure to potential accidents.	Diamond drill can usually drill to greater depth although depths up to 800m have been achieved with.
Reduced contractor activity in the mine reduces mine support burden.	
Indirect cost reductions gained from a simplified sampling process.	

**Diamond Core Drilling**

Diamond drilling allows the removal of solid cylinders of rock (core) from deep within the earth.

Drill Structure

Diamond core drilling is so called because it uses a ‘diamond bit’. This drill bit is composed of group of small, industrial grade diamonds set into a metallic, soft matrix. As the ground is drilled, this matrix will wear away and expose more diamonds.

This is then attached to a drill rod, which is around 10 foot in length, and then more sections of pipe can be attached to the top of this, so a greater depth can be drilled. The depth that is drilled to is estimated by the number of rods attached to the top of the drill rod.

Inside the drill rod, a core tube is attached to a cable via a latching mechanism. The core tube is lifted to the surface using the cable, so the solid core can be removed.

There are two primary types of diamond drilling-rotary drilling and wineline drilling. Rotary drilling is used primarily for bore hole drilling, whereas wineline drilling is used for solid core sampling.

There are five standard tube sizes associated with wire line drilling. These are as follows:

- AQ (Hole diameter: 48mm)
- BQ (60mm)
- NQ (75.5mm)
- HQ (96mm)
- PQ (122.6mm)

The drill size used depends on the desired core diameter and the desired depth of drilling, and the wider the diameter of the tube, the more power that is required to drive the drilling (AZOMining, 2012).

Core Extraction

To extract core, the drill rod rotates the diamond bit, spinning it into the ground. As the drill bit bores through the rock, solid rock is taken into the circular opening at the end of the bit, into the core tube, and can then be recovered at the surface as it piles up. Once the core is recovered at the surface it is broken along natural fractures and stored in core trays to await analysis. A standard core tray can hold around 10 feet of core.

For optimum core extraction, the driller must listen to the drill to evaluate subsurface conditions. To keep drilling efficient, the rotation speed, pressure and water circulation must be strictly monitored.

Sometimes when drilling in highly fractured zones, overheating can occur due to a stuck bit. This issue is usually counteracted by the injection of mud or sawdust to plug fractures in the rock.

Application

Diamond core finds its primary function in the exploration mining sector. It is usually one of the last stages of exploration, during which the orebody is delineated in three dimensions. This will determine whether the prospect is economically viable. Using a diamond drill rig, long vertical sections of core can be extracted from deep in the ground, which can then be analysed at the surface by geologists.

The core can then be analysed using a wide range of petrologic, structural and mineralogical techniques to determine whether the potential mining site is economically viable.

Extracted core is first washed and macroscopic features are logged by an exploration geologist. The core is then cut and representative samples are sent for chemical analysis (AZOMining, 2012).

Pros & Cons of the alternative Diamond Core Drilling

Advantages	Disadvantages
Highly accurate cutting	Drill bits are often not very big and they are mostly able to cut through only stone, rock and cement.
A reduced risk of inadvertently causing structural damage	There is a powerful kick back from the machinery so caution needs to be applied when using diamond core drilling.
Less debris is produced	While dust will not accumulate in large quantities some dust is likely to go into the drilling machine which can have an effect on its functioning and effectiveness.
Suitable for just about any working environment	
Very little noise and no dust	
Equipment is lightweight and portable	
Can be done remotely which limits the safety hazards.	
Drill to great depth	

**Percussion rotary air blast (RAB)**

Percussion rotary air blast drilling is a commonly used drilling technique used for exploratory drilling i.e. when minerals are being searched for. Percussion rotary air blast drilling is also often used for water bore drilling and blasthole drilling of mines.

This drilling technique makes use of pneumatic pressure to drive the steel drill bit into the ground in order to create a hole. It is a hammer like process that is easily able to penetrate rock in order to find mineral and ore deposits. The drill bits used are hollow. The debris which results from the **drilling process** shoots out of the earth and lands next to the machine. The unwanted material will land on the surface, next to the machine, by the use of air compression that is forced into the mine shaft. This is method of drilling is not always the best method to use when it comes to exploratory drilling as the materials to be sampled can be damaged when the materials are blasted from the earth. The percussion rotary air blast drilling procedure can usually be completed within a day.

**Percussion rotary air blast drilling** is the perfect method to be used when the exploratory drilling needs to be done on hard material such as rock. The percussion rotary air blast drilling method can penetrate up to 25 metres. If a mining company simply wants to have a small sample of the product which they are mining, then this method is simple and cost effective to be use. When there is a rock layer sitting on top of the soil which needs to be analysed for mineral presence, percussion rotary air blast drilling can be used to break away the top layer of rock so that the underneath soil can be explored.

Pros & Cons of the alternative Percussion rotary air blast (RAB):

Advantages	Disadvantages
Can be completed very quickly and easily through almost every different type of rock, this is the biggest advantage to percussion rotary air blast drilling.	The biggest disadvantages to percussion rotary air blast drilling are that for the effective use of the machinery, an experienced operator needs to be employed and while the machine can break through almost all types of rock, it cannot break through rock which is reinforced by steel.
Simple to operate and maintain	Slow, compared with other methods
Suitable for a wide variety of rock	Equipment can be heavy
Operation is possible above and below the water-table	Problems can occur with unstable rock formations.
Possible to drill to considerable depths	Water is needed for dry holes to help remove cuttings.

Pros & Cons of the alternative **Dense Media Separation (DMS)**

Advantages	Disadvantages
DMS plants is used mostly for kimberlite deposits	10 times more expensive than Rotary pan
	Water consumption is high
	Operating costs are expensive

In a Dense Media Separation (DMS) plant, powdered ferrosilicon (an alloy of iron and silicone) is suspended in water to form a fluid near the density of diamond (3.52 g/cm<sup>3</sup>), to which the diamond bearing material is added to begin the separation process of the heavier minerals from the lighter material. Additional separation of the denser material occurs by centrifuge in “cyclones” that swirl the mixture at low and high speeds, forcing the diamonds and other dense minerals to the walls and then out the bottom of the cyclone. Waste water rises at the center of the cyclones and is sucked out and screened to remove waste particles. The DMS process results in a concentrate that generally weighs less than one percent of the original material fed into the plant at the beginning of the process.

Pros & Cons of the alternative **Rotary Pan Plants**

Advantages	Disadvantages
More cost effective	The industry perception that Rotary Pan Plants yield poorer diamond recoveries
Readily available	
Generate more work opportunities	
Consume less water	
Rotary Pan Plants are most often used when mining alluvial deposits	

In a Rotary Pan plant, crushed ore, when mining kimberlite, or alluvial gravel and soil is mixed with water to create a liquid slurry called “puddle” which has a density in the 1.3 to 1.5 g/cm<sup>3</sup> range. The mix is stirred in the pan by angled rotating “teeth”. The heavier minerals, or “concentrate”, settle to the bottom and are pushed toward an extraction point, while lighter waste remains suspended and overflows out of the centre of the pan as a separate stream of material. The concentrate, representing just a small percentage of the original kimberlite ore or alluvial gravels, is drawn off for final recovery of the diamonds.

Both methods are in actual fact used for bulk material reduction and require a further process for the final diamond recovery however, for this project the Rotary Pan will be used.

**ii) Details of the Public Participation Process Followed**

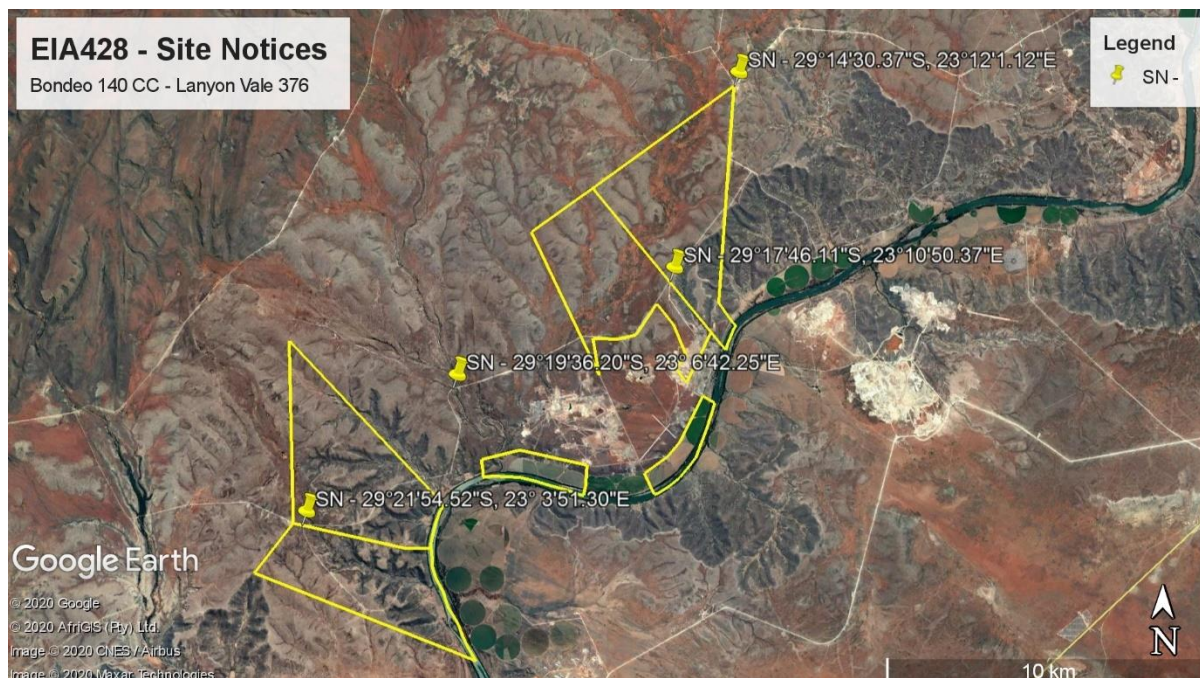
Describe the process undertaken to consult interested and affected parties including public meetings and one on one consultation. NB the affected parties must be specifically consulted regardless of whether or not they attended public meetings. (Information to be provided to affected parties must include sufficient detail of the intended operation to enable them to assess what impact the activities will have on them or on the use of their land.

**Advertisement and Notices**

An advertisement was placed in English in the local newspaper (**Noordkaap**, see **Appendix 6**) notifying the public of the EIA process and requesting Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs) to register with, and submit their comments to Milnex CC. I&APs were given the opportunity to raise comments within 30 days of the advertisement.

**Site notices**

Site notices will be placed (as anticipated on the coordinates below) on site in English to inform surrounding communities and immediately adjacent landowners of the proposed development. I&APs will be given the opportunity to raise comments. Photographic evidence of the site notices will be included in **Appendix 6**. Below are the coordinates where the site notices will be placed.



**Figure 4: Site notice co-ordinates**

**Direct notification and circulation of Scoping Report to identified I&APs, landowners and occupiers**

Identified I&APs, including key stakeholders representing various sectors, are directly informed of the proposed development and the availability of the Scoping Report via registered post on **24 February 2020** and were requested to submit comments by **26 March 2020**. A copy of the report is also available at the Milnex offices in Schweizer-Reneke, 4 Botha Street, Schweizer-Reneke and Potchefstroom (Waterberry Street, Waterberry Square, 1st floor, Office 5B, Potchefstroom), between 7:30AM and 5PM, Monday to Friday. For a complete list of stakeholder details and for proof of registered post see **Appendix 6**. The consultees included:

**Table 1: List of Stakeholders, Landowners, & surrounding landowners**

Stakeholders	Landowners	Surrounding Landowner
Northern Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Nature Conservation (DENC)	Cornelius Jacobus Coetzee Christina Coetzee	Jan Louis Koen Kotze



Stakeholders	Landowners	Surrounding Landowner
Department of Mineral Resources and Energy, Northern Cape. (DMRE)	PG Vlok Trust Arnoldus Christiaan Vlok Snr Petrus Gideon Vlok	Matthew Eden Williams
Department of Human Settlement, Water and Sanitation (DHSWS)	JWC Trust Eugene Miljo, Heinrich Miljo and Rion Miljo	Daniel Jacobus Fourie
NC Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF)	Uitgezocht Trust	Johannes Bean
Northern Cape Department of Agriculture, Land Reform & Rural Development (DALRRD)	Stedela (Pty) Ltd. Mr. Johan Gerber, Mr. Deon Gerber Mr. Stephan Gerber	Elsiesdrif Plase Pty Ltd Thomas Arnoldus Lubbe
Department of Roads and Public Works (DRPW)		Kosie Smith Trust Miemie Elizabeth Adriane Smith
Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality		Petrus Stefanus Cornelius
WESSA		HC van Wyk Diamonds (Pty) Ltd Honey Prokureurs: Donovan Majiedt
Local Councilor at Siyathemba Local Municipality		Lanyonvale Landgoed CC
Municipal manager at Siyathemba Local Municipality		Atro Plase Pty Ltd
		PG Vlok Trust Arnoldus Christiaan Vlok Snr Petrus Gideon Vlok
		James Dupleix Higgs
		Redivivus Louw Deceased
		Stefanus Abraham Cilliers
		Minnaar Higgs Trust Andrias Tobias van Heerden

## 2. Consultation

The public meeting is an opportunity to share information regarding the proposed development and provide I&APs with an opportunity to raise any issues and provide comments.

The Public Meeting was scheduled for **18th of March 2020** at 11:00am–12:00pm next to gravel road at the Wouterspan sign board, at the coordinates mentioned below.

### Coordinates

29°17'45.94"S, 23°10'50.03"E

### Directions to Public Meeting

- From Douglas drive over the bridge going to Schmidtsdrif.
- Just as you pass the bridge, take the first turnoff on your left-hand side.
- Drive for approximately 23.9km, there will be a fork in the road, turn left.

Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

- Follow the road for approximately 24.7km, turn left at the T-junction.
- Follow the road for approximately 22.9km.
- Milnex CC personnel will be waiting next to the gravel road at the Wouterspan sign board on your left-hand side.

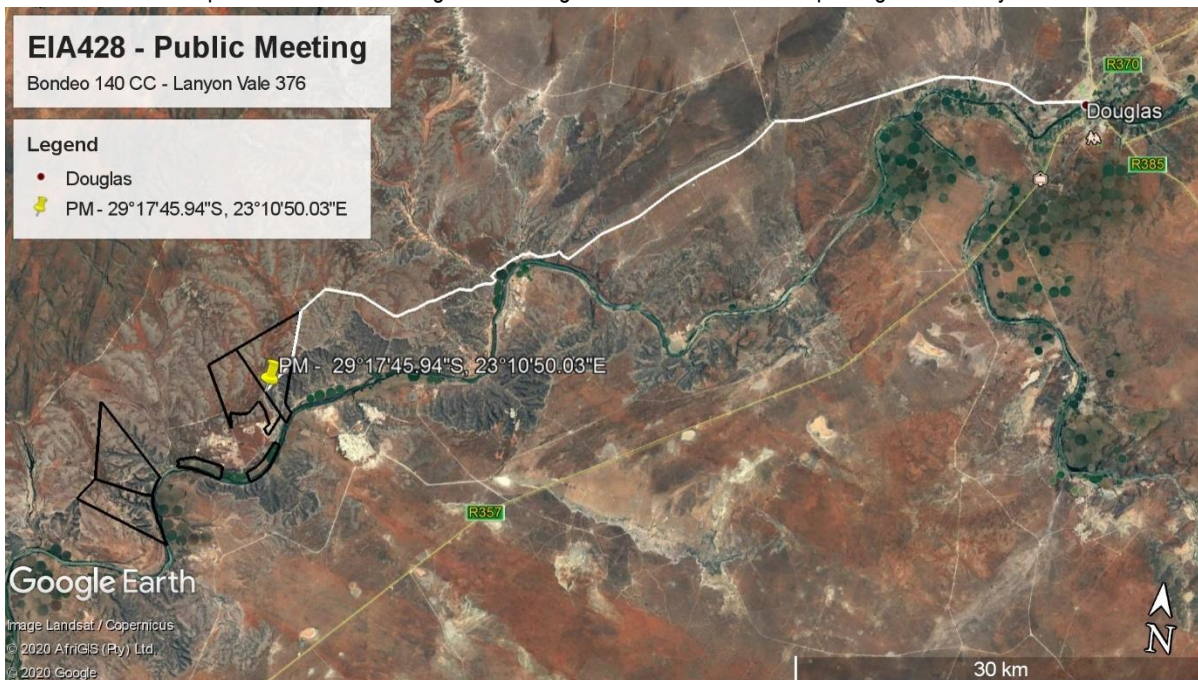


Figure 5: Directions to the public meeting

**Public meeting:**

**NB:** The interested and affected parties were given an opportunity to register via site notice, press advert and letters.

Public meeting was held on 18<sup>th</sup> of March 2020 at 11:00am–12:00pm next to gravel road at the Wouterspan sign board.

The meeting was attended by Mr. Jason Chabalala and Mr. Pierre Venter from Milnex CC Environmental Consultation and the following I&APs:

- Mr S Gerber
- Mr D Gerber
- Mr S Cornelius
- Mr F Gouws
- Mr J Gerber

Attached as **Appendix 6** is the signed attendance register and Minutes of the meeting.

**Direct notification and circulation of Draft EIR & EMPr to identified I&APs, landowners and occupiers**

Identified I&APs, including key stakeholders representing various sectors, are directly informed of the proposed development and the availability of the Draft EIR & EMPr via registered post on **24 July 2020** and were requested to submit comments by **24 August 2020**. A copy of the report is also available at the Milnex offices in Schweizer-Reneke, 4 Botha Street, Schweizer-Reneke and Potchefstroom (Waterberry Street, Waterberry Square, 1st floor, Office 5B, Potchefstroom), between 7:30AM and 5PM, Monday to Friday. For a complete list of stakeholder details and for proof of registered post see **Appendix 6**.

**Issues Raised by Interested and Affected Parties**

Comments received during this period are attached as comment & response report as well as populated in the table of summary of issues raised.

iii) Summary of Issues Raised by I&APs

(Complete the table summarising comments and issues raised, and reaction to those responses)

Interested and Affected Parties		Issues raised	EAPs response to issues as mandated by the applicant	Section and paragraph reference in this report where the issue and or response where incorporated
List the names of persons consulted in this column, and Mark with an X where those who must be consulted were in fact consulted.				
Organisation	Contact person			
<b>Landowner</b>				
Lanyon Vale 7/376	Cornelius Jacobus Coetzee Christina Coetzee	No comments received		
Lanyon Vale RE/9/376 Lanyon Vale 14/376	PG Vlok Trust Arnoldus Christiaan Vlok Snr Petrus Gideon Vlok	No comments received		
Lanyon Vale 11/376	JWC Trust Eugene Miljo	No comments received		
	JWC Trust Heinrich Miljo	No comments received		
	JWC Trust Rion Miljo	No comments received		
Lanyon Vale RE/16/376	Uitgezocht Trust	No comments received		
Lanyon Vale RE/18/376	Stedela (Pty) Ltd. Mr. Johan Gerber, Mr. Deon Gerber Mr. Stephan Gerber Vonesse Gerber			
<b>Surrounding Landowners</b>				



<b>Lanyon Vale RE/376</b>	Jan Louis Koen Kotze	No comments received		
<b>Kalkfontein 5/374</b>	Matthew Eden Williams	No comments received		
<b>Farm 2/377</b>	Daniel Jacobus Fourie	No comments received		
<b>Klipfontein RE/381</b>	Johannes Bean	No comments received		
<b>Lanyon Vale 10/376 Lanyon Vale 15/376</b>	Elsiesdrif Plase Pty Ltd Thomas Arnoldus Lubbe	No comments received		
	Elsiesdrif Plase Pty Ltd Petro Marie Lubbe & Thomas Arnoldus Lubbe	No comments received		
<b>Lanyon Vale 24/376</b>	Petrus Stefanus Cornelius	No comments received		
<b>Lanyon Vale 25/376</b>	HC van Wyk Diamonds (Pty) Ltd Honey Prokureurs: Donovan Majiedt	No comments received		
<b>Lanyon Vale 22/376</b>	Lanyonvale Landgoed CC	No comments received		
<b>Lanyon Vale 4/376</b>	Atro Plase Pty Ltd	No comments received		
<b>Lanyon Vale 20/376</b>	PG Vlok Trust Arnoldus Christiaan Vlok Snr Petrus Gideon Vlok	No comments received		
<b>Brakfontein 1/276 Brakfontein 2/276</b>	James Dupleix Higgs	No comments received		
<b>Viegulands Put RE/39 Kalk Krans 2/41</b>	Redivivus Louw Deceased	No comments received		

<b>Lanyon Vale 6/376</b>	Stefanus Abraham Cilliers	No comments received		
<b>Kalk Krans RE/41</b>	Minnaar Higgs Trust Andrias Tobias van Heerden	No comments received		
<b>Kalk Krans 1/41</b>	Louw Johan-Trustees	No comments received		
<b>Niewejaars Kraal 6/40</b>	Nuwejaarskraal Testamentere Trust	No comments received		
<b>Niewejaars Kraal 7/40 consolidated to 13/40</b>	No Information available on SearchWorks	No comments received		
<b>Niewejaars Kraal 8/40 consolidated to 14/40</b>	No Information available on SearchWorks	No comments received		
<b>Niewejaars Kraal 9/40 consolidated to 15/40</b>	No Information available on SearchWorks	No comments received		
<b>Brakfontein RE/375</b>	Beukes Piet B/E Beukes Gert Beukes Jacobus	No comments received		
<b>Paarde Kloof RE/11</b>	No Information available on SearchWorks	No comments received		
<b>Brakfontein 3/276</b>	Brakfontein Trust	No comments received		
<b>The Municipality in which jurisdiction the development is located</b>				
<b>Siyathemba Local Municipality</b>	Municipal Manager: Mr Isaac Stadhauer	No comments received		
<b>Municipal councilor of the ward in which the site is located</b>				
<b>Siyathemba Local Municipality</b>	Ward 4 Councillor	No comments received		
<b>Organs of state having jurisdiction</b>				
<b>Department of Environmental Affairs and Nature Conservation, Northern Cape (DENC)</b>	Mrs. Doreen Werth	No comments received		

<b>Department of Mineral Resources and Energy, Northern Cape. (DMRE)</b>	Tumelo Sedupane Mmboneni Mutheiwana			
	Mmboneni Mutheiwana			
	Ndlelenhle Zindela			
	Ndlelenhle Zindela			
	Mr. Ntsundeni Ravhugoni			
	Mmboneni Mutheiwana			
<b>Department of Human Settlement, Water and Sanitation (DHSWS)</b>	To whom it may concern	No comments received		
<b>Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Northern Cape (DAFF)</b>	To whom it may concern	No comments received		
	Chief forester Mrs J. Mans	No comments received		
	Mr. Harm Vorster	No comments received		
<b>Northern Cape Department of Agriculture, Land Reform &amp; Rural Development (DALRRD)</b>	Pabalelo Mokale			
<b>Department of Roads and Public Works (DRPW)</b>	Communication Officer: Crystal Robertson	No comments received		
<b>Other–</b>				
<b>Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality</b>	Municipal Manager: Mr Rodney Pieterse	No comments received		
<b>WESSA (National Office)</b>	To whom it may concern	No comments received		

**iv) the environmental attributes associated with the development footprint alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;**

**Baseline Environment**

The baseline environment is described with specific reference to geotechnical conditions, ecological habitat and landscape features, Soil, land capability and agricultural potential, climate and the visual landscape.

**(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity.**

(its current geographical, physical, biological, socio- economic, and cultural character).

**Geology and Soils**

The present Orange River between Douglas and Prieska displays a meandering channel morphology, best developed in areas underlain by the Dwyka Group. All the different fluvial terrace deposits are covered by Rooikoppie gravels, which represent mobile, multi-cycle deflation and gravitational deposits and/or elevated (inverted) fluvial deposits and preserved and recycled repeatedly from one successive land surface to the next. Only the most durable silicic clast Branded iron formation (BIF, quartzite, chert, etc.) survived this deflation recycling and diamonds are only present where the Rooikoppie gravels recycled older diamondiferous fluvial deposits.

Palaeochannel depositional packages of the Orange River are preserved at different elevations above the present Orange Riverbed. Diamondiferous Rooikoppie gravel scree slopes higher than the oldest preserved fluvial deposits suggest that even older and higher elevation paleo-deposits were present and have been removed completely by erosion.

The ages of these terraces young with decreasing elevation and vary from Pleistocene-Pliocene for the lower terraces to Pliocene-Miocene for the upper terraces. Conversely, the probability of preservation decreases with increasing age and elevation.

The most consistent high-level paleo deposit, and the one on which the geological model for this area was developed, occurs between 60-90m above river level. These deposits represent palaeomeanders exhibiting a wavelength of approximately 13km and an amplitude of about 6km, very similar to that of the modern-river. These gravel deposits occur at about 1000 masl. and generally slope slightly to the south, away from the Orange River. Both the calcrete cap and the bedrock exhibit this same slope. The meanders are generally covered entirely by either calcrete or wind-blown sand, or both, but careful mapping has defined points of entry and emergence of palaeochannel deposits from underneath the upper calcrete cap, along the valley scarps.

Frequency of occurrence suggests that the known deposits represent the complete palaeochannel profile for this section of the river. The correspondence in palaeo- and modern river morphology, for this cycle, indicates that this sector of the Orange River system remained in relative equilibrium since, probably, the Miocene. All the preserved meanders at this elevation lie to the south of the present river channel suggesting that meander cut-off occurred mostly along the northern loops of the meanders. This may be an indication of regional slope to the south or slow, continuous uplift to the north.

The primary sources of diamonds trapped in the palaeogravels of the Orange River are kimberlites and intermediate secondary sources like alluvial, colluvial and fluvial deposits in the catchment regions of the Vaal and Orange rivers. These diamonds were deposited along the course of the river in favourable trap sites either in bedrock-traps or in point-bar complexes and within-channel bars, particularly in meanders, scour pools and areas of divergent flow.

In the range of deposits on Wouterspan and within the context of the model presented diamonds were first deposited in gravel units at an elevation of + 110m above the present river. As a result of consecutive cycles of continental uplift and erosion, the oldest diamondiferous gravels deposited by the Orange River have been recycled and re-deposited repeatedly through time down to the lowest level gravels as preserved today.

Lower elevation terraces (less than about 30m above present river bed) of the Orange River are typified by up to 30% sand matrix with a high proportion of zeolite-rich sand lenses and a high proportion of red Drakensberg basalt clasts. These gravels normally

exhibit intermediate to low diamond grades. They are typically cobble-peddle gravels with occasional boulders. Clast composition is dominated by BIF +60%, andesite, dolerite, shale, quartzite, riebeckite and others with a low percentage of agate and amygdales. Clast-rounding is moderate, packing is moderate to poor which impacts negatively on diamond entrapment potential. Average grades of 0.5-1.2ct/m<sup>3</sup> or 0.23-0.54cpht are known with the occurrence of occasional large stones. The lowest terrace does not appear to be as calcreted as the upper two terraces and mining is, therefore, easier. Lower terrace deposits are generally covered by 1-4m of sand whereas the upper terrace deposits are capped by a hard calcrete layer some 2-3m thick which protected the gravel deposits from erosion and prevented exploitation in the past.

The Wouterspan deposit comprises an extensive flat lying alluvial sequence located on the right bank of the modern Orange River extending across an area of approximately 4x3km. the bedrock is well exposed in the workings and shale and tillite of the Karoo age Dwyka Group, are common. The bedrock displays an irregular erosional surface with gully and pothole features creating high diamond trapping potential.

At Wouterspan, the gravel terrace occurs approximately 20-40m above the Orange River and appear to have been deposited in a braided river environment. These terraces are, probably, of lower to intermediate age.

Thin (<2m), extensive Rooikoppie blanket the property. The fluvial-alluvial sequence is comprised of a basal gravel overlain by a generally upward-fining sequence with hanging gravel lenses known as "Middlings". The sequence is covered by a (non-silcreted) calcrete cap, generally less than 5m thick. Post-depositional weathering of this calcrete has formed solution hollows called "makondos" which are often filled with diamond-enriched rooikoppie gravels.

### **Mineralisation**

The palaeochannel gravels are mineralised by diamonds derived from the weathering and erosion of kimberlites present in the headwaters of the paleo-Vaal river system. Colluvial and eluvial post-depositional modification of these fluvial-alluvial deposits resulted in the formation of the rooikoppie gravels.

Under arid conditions low stream flow typically results in wide, shallow channels. The valleys displays moderate sinuosity and braiding may be frequent. Braided streams are highly transient environments. The braided channel are unstable through time and gravel bars are formed and destroyed continuously. Shifting bars and channels cause wide variations in local flow conditions resulting in varied depositional assemblages. Common feature in braided stream deposits include irregular bed thicknesses, restricted lateral and vertical variations within the sediments, and evidence of erosion and re-deposition.

### **Ecological habitat and landscape features**

The proposed area falls within vegetation units NKu 3 and AZa 4 which is known as the Northern Upper Karoo and Upper Gariiep Alluvial Vegetation. The Northern Upper Karoo is part of the Upper Karoo Bioregion, which is a sub-bioregion for the Nama-Karoo Biome. The Upper Gariiep Alluvial Vegetation is part of the Alluvial Vegetation Bioregion which is a sub-bioregion for the Inland Azonal Vegetation.

#### **Northern Upper Karoo**

According to Mucina and Rutherford (2006:340), the Northern Upper Karoo vegetation covers the Northern Cape and Free State Provinces which include the Northern regions of the Upper Karoo plateau from Prieska, Vosburg and Carnarvon in the west to Philipstown, Petrusville and Petrusburg in the east. Bordered in the north by Niekerkshoop, Douglas and Petrusburg and in the south by Carnarvon, Pampoenpoort and De Aar. A few Patches occur in Griqualand West. It is situated on an altitude of 1000m – 1500m.

The shrubland area is dominated by dwarf karoo shrubs, grasses and *Anacia mellifera* subsp. *detinens* and some other low trees (especially on sandy soils in the northern parts and vicinity of the Orange River). Flat to gently sloping, with isolated hills of Upper Karoo Hardeveld in the south and Vaalbos Rocky Shrubland in the northeast and with many interspersed pans.

#### **Some other important Taxa found on in the area:**

Small Trees: *Acacia mellifera* subsp. *detinens*, *Boscia albitrunca*.

Tall Shrubs: *Lycium cinereum* (d) *L. horridum*, *L. oxycarpum*, *L. schizocalyx*, *Rhigozum trichotomum*.

Low Shrubs: *Chrysocoma ciliata* (d), *Gnidia polycephala* (d), *Pentzia calcarea* (d), *P. globosa* (d), *P. incana* (d), *P. spinescens* (d), *Rosenia humilis* (d), *Amphiglossa triflora*, *Aptosimum marlothii*, *A. spinescens*, *Asparagus glauca*, *Barleria rigida*, *Berkheya annectens*, *Eriocephalus ericoides* subsp. *ericoides*, *E. gladulosus*, *E. spinescens*, *Euryops asparagoides*, *Felicia muricata*, *Helichrysum lucilioides*, *Hermannia spinosa*, *Leucas capensis*, *Limeum aethiopicum*, *Melolobium candicans*, *Microloma armatum*, *Osteospermum leptolobum*, *O. spinescens*, *Pegolettia retrofracta*, *Pentzia lanata*, *Phyllanthus maderaspatensis*, *Plinthus karoocicus*, *Pteronia glauca*, *P. sordida*, *Selago geniculata*, *S. saxatilis*, *Tetragonia arbuscular*, *Zygophyllum lichtensteinianum*.

Herbs: *Chamaesyce inaequilatera*, *Convolvulus sagittatus*, *Dicoma capensis*, *Gazania krebsiana*, *Hermannia comosa*, *Indigofera alternans*, *Lessertia pauciflora*, *Radyera urens*, *Sesamum capense*, *Sutera pinnatifida*, *Tribulus terrestris*, *Vahlia capensis*.

Graminoids: *Aristida adscensoinis* (d), *A. congesta* (d), *A. diffusa* (d), *Enneapogon desvauxii* (d), *Eragrostis lehmanniana* (d), *E. obtusa* (d), *E. truncata* (d), *Sporobolus fimbriatus* (d), *Stipagrostis obtusa* (d), *Eragrostis bicolor*, *E. porosa*, *Fingerhuthia Africana*, *Heteropogon contortus*, *Stipagrostis ciliata*, *Themeda triandra*, *Tragus berteronianus*, *T. koelerioides*, *T. racemosus*.

Succulent Shrubs: *Hertia pallens*, *Salsola calluna*, *S. glabrescens*, *S. rabieana*, *S. tuberculata*, *Zygophyllum flexuosum*.

Semiparasitic Shrubs: *Thesium hystrix* (d)

Succulent Herb: *Psilocalon coriarium*.

Geophytic Herb: *Moraea pallida*.

Mucina and Rutherford (2006:340) also states that the conservation of the Northern Upper Karoo, is Least Threatened with a target of 21%. About 4% has been cleared for cultivation (the highest proportion of any type in the Nama-Karoo) or irreversibly transformed by building of dams (Houwater, Kalkfontein and Smart Syndicate Dams). Areas of human settlements are increasing in the north-eastern part of this vegetation types. Erosion is moderate at 46.2%, very low at 32% and low at 20%. According to Hoffman *et al.* (1999) as stated by Mucina and Rutherford (2006:340) *Prosopis* occurs in generally isolated patches, with densities ranging from very scattered to medium (associated with the lower Vaal River drainage system and the confluences with the Orange River) to localised closed woodland on the western borders of the unit with Bushmanland Basin Shrubland.

#### Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation

According to Mucina and Rutherford (2006:639), the Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation covers the Free State and Northern Cape Province: Broad alluvia of the Orange River, lower Caledon as well as lower stretches of the Vaal, Riet and Modder rivers as far as Groblershoop. These river stretches are surrounded by vegetation units of broad transitional regions between the dry facies of the Savanna and Grassland and northern regions of the Nama-Karoo Biome. Altitude ranging from 1000 – 1500m.

The area has flat alluvial terraces supporting complex of riparian thickets (gallery forests) dominated by native *Acacia karroo* and *Diospyros lycioides*, flooded grasslands, reed beds and ephemeral herblands populating mainly sand banks within the river and on its banks

#### **Some other important Taxa found on in the area:**

##### Riparian thickets

Small trees: *Acacia karroo* (d), *Celtis Africana* (d), *Salix mucronata* subsp. *mucronata* (d)

Tall shrubs: *Diospyros lycioides* (d), *Melianthus comosus* (d), *Rhus pyroides*

Low Shrubs: *Asparagus setaceus*, *A. suaveolens*.

Woody Climber: *Clematis brachiata*.

Succulent Shrub: *Lycium arenicola*, *L. hirsutum*.

Herb: *Rubia cordifolia*

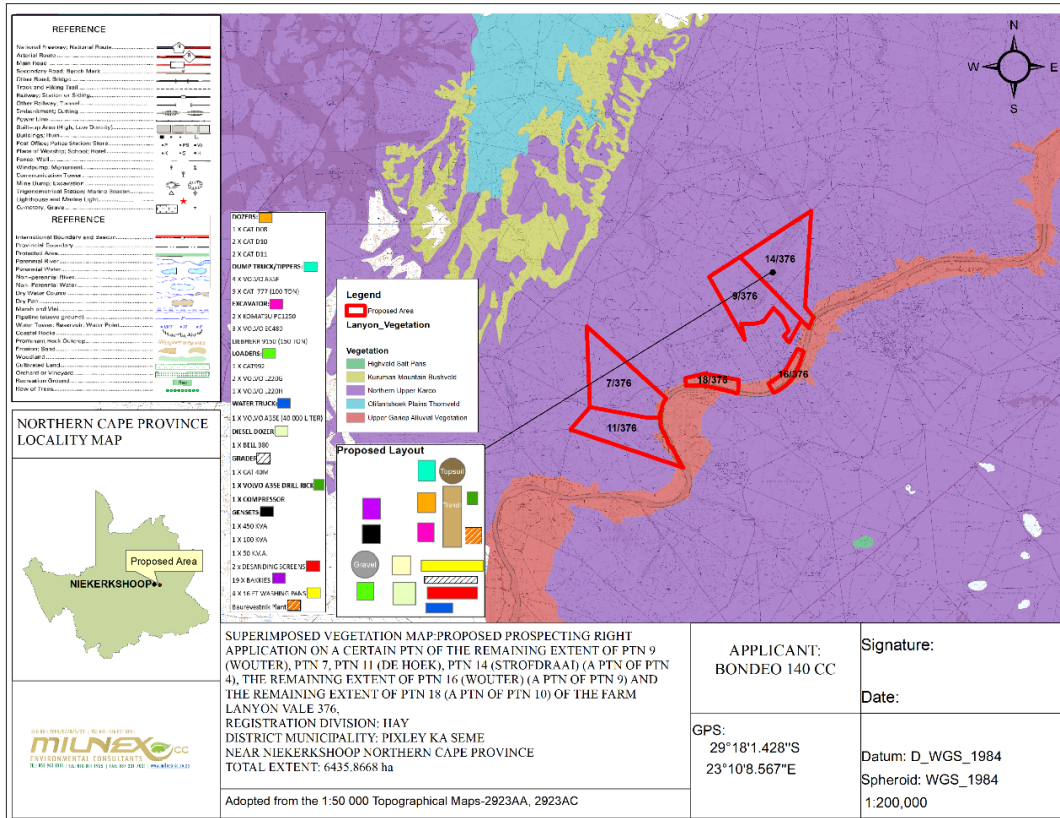
##### Flooded grasslands & herblands

Graminoids: *Melica decumbens* (d)

Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

Herbs: *Cineraria dregeana*, *C. lobate*.

Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation has a conservation which is vulnerable with a target of 31%. Only about 3% statutorily conserved in Tussen Die Riviere, Gariep Dam and Oviston Nature Reserve. More than 20% transformation for cultivation (vegetable grapes) and building of dams. Exotic woody species such as *Salix babylonica*, *Eucalyptus camaldulensis*, *E. sideroxylon*, *Prosopis* and *Populus* species have become common dominants in patches of heavily disturbed alluvial vegetation (Mucina and Rutherford, 2006:639-640).









Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

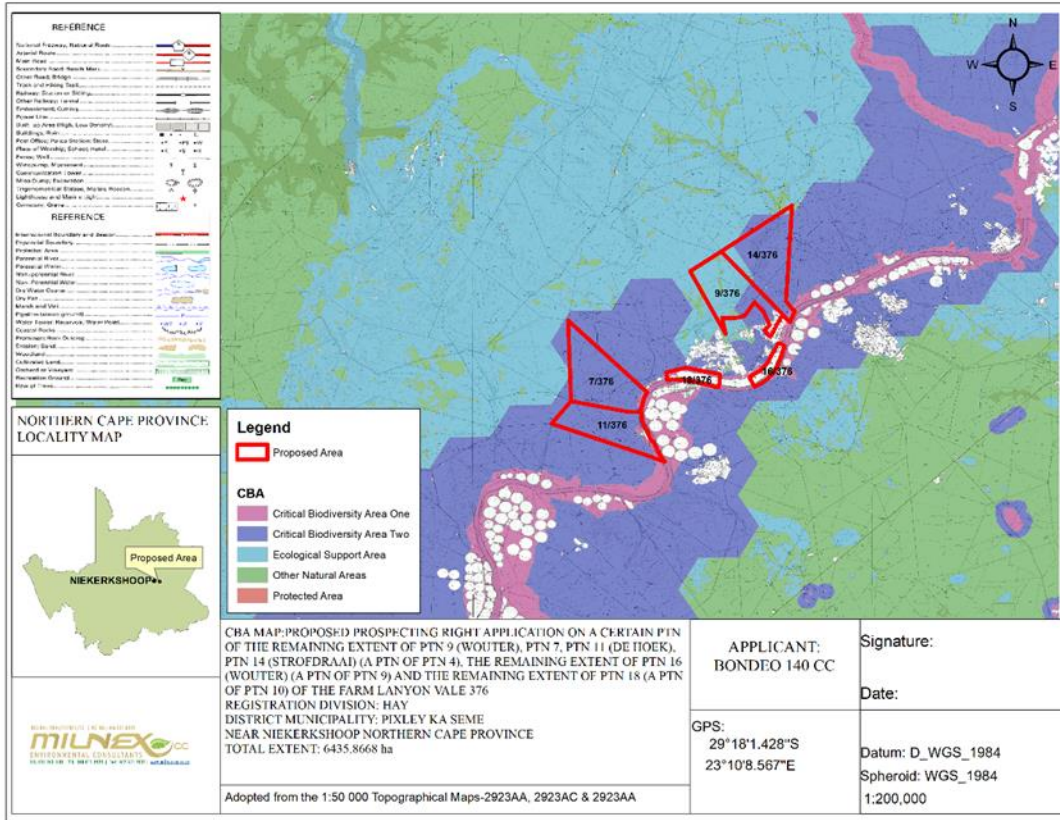


Figure 8: Critical Biodiversity Areas Map.

### Biodiversity Priority Areas for Mining

The Mining and Biodiversity Guideline was developed in 2013 for the purpose of mainstreaming biodiversity management practices into the mining sector (DEA, DMR, Chamber of Mines, SAMBF & SANBI 2013). This Guideline provides explicit direction in terms of where mining-related impacts are legally prohibited, where biodiversity priority areas may present high risks for mining projects, and where biodiversity may limit the potential for mining. The Guideline distinguishes between four categories of biodiversity priority areas in relation to their importance from a biodiversity and ecosystem service perspective as well as the implications for mining in these areas (Table 2).

Table 2: Four categories of biodiversity priority areas in relation to their biodiversity importance and implications for mining.

Category	Biodiversity Priority Areas	Risks for Mining	Implications for Mining
<b>A. Legally Protected</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protected areas (including National Parks, Nature Reserves, World Heritage Sites, Protected Environments, Nature Reserves)</li> <li>Areas declared under Section 49 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002)</li> </ul>	<b>Mining Prohibited</b>	<p>Mining projects cannot commence as mining is legally prohibited. Although mining is prohibited in Protected Areas, it may be allowed in Protected Environments if both the Minister of Mineral Resources and Minister of Environmental Affairs approve it.</p> <p>In cases where mining activities were conducted lawfully in protected areas before Section 48 of the Protected Areas Act (No. 57 of 2003) came into effect, the Minister of Environmental Affairs may, after consulting with the Minister of Mineral Resources, allow such mining activities to continue, subject to prescribed conditions that reduce environmental impacts.</p>

<p><b>B. Highest Biodiversity Importance</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Critically endangered and endangered ecosystems</li> <li>• Critical Biodiversity Areas (or equivalent areas) from provincial spatial biodiversity plans</li> <li>• River and wetland Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (FEPAs) and a 1km buffer around these FEPAs</li> <li>• Ramsar Sites</li> </ul>	<p><b>Highest Risk for Mining</b></p>	<p>Environmental screening, environmental impact assessment (EIA) and their associated biodiversity specialist studies should focus on confirming the presence and significance of these biodiversity features, and to provide site-specific basis on which to apply the mitigation hierarchy to inform regulatory decision-making for mining, water use licences, and environmental authorisations.</p> <p>If they are confirmed, the likelihood of a fatal flaw for new mining projects is very high because of the significance of the biodiversity features in these areas and the associated ecosystem services. These areas are viewed as necessary to ensure protection of biodiversity, environmental sustainability, and human well-being.</p> <p>An EIA should include the strategic assessment of optimum, sustainable land use for an area and will determine the significance of the impact on biodiversity.</p> <p>This assessment should fully consider the environmental sensitivity of the area, the overall environmental and socio-economic costs and benefits of mining, as well as the potential strategic importance of the minerals to the country.</p> <p>Authorisations may well not be granted. If granted, the authorisation may set limits on allowed activities and impacts and may specify biodiversity offsets that would be written into licence agreements and/or authorisations.</p>
<p><b>C. High Biodiversity Importance</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Protected area buffers (including buffers around National Parks, World Heritage Sites* and Nature Reserves)</li> <li>• Transfrontier Conservation Areas (remaining areas outside of formally proclaimed protected areas)</li> <li>• Other identified priorities from provincial spatial biodiversity plans</li> <li>• High water yield areas</li> <li>• Coastal Protection Zone</li> <li>• Estuarine functional zone</li> </ul> <p>*Note that the status of buffer areas of World Heritage Sites is subject to a current intra-governmental process</p>	<p><b>High Risk for Mining</b></p>	<p>These areas are important for conserving biodiversity, for supporting or buffering other biodiversity priority areas, and for maintaining important ecosystem services for communities or the country.</p> <p>An EIA should include an assessment of optimum, sustainable land use for an area and will determine the significance of the impact on biodiversity.</p> <p>Mining options may be limited in these areas, and limitations for mining projects are possible.</p> <p>Authorisations may set limits and specify biodiversity offsets that would be written into licence agreements and/or authorisations.</p>
<p><b>D. Moderate Biodiversity Importance</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ecological support areas</li> <li>• Vulnerable ecosystems</li> <li>• Focus areas for protected area expansion (land-based and offshore protection)</li> </ul>	<p><b>Moderate Risk for Mining</b></p>	<p>These areas are of moderate biodiversity value.</p> <p>EIAs and their associated specialist studies should focus on confirming the presence and significance of these biodiversity features, identifying features (e.g. threatened (land-based and offshore protection) species) not</p>



Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

or *Protected Species (ToPS) List (NEMBA, 10 of 2004)*. Several species possibly occurring on site are protected under NEMBA (See species in bold).

Although not listed in the Table overleaf, there is a possibility of the Critically Endangered Riverine Rabbit (*Bunolagus monticularis*) occurring on site, as this species inhabits dense riparian growth along the seasonal rivers in the Nama-Karoo shrubland (Skinner & Chimimba 2005).

### **Herpetofauna**

The local occurrences of reptiles and amphibians (collectively known as Herpetofauna) are closely dependent on broadly defined habitat types, terrestrial, arboreal (tree-living), rupicolous (rock dwelling) and wetland-associated vegetation cover. **Table 20** lists all species of Amphibian and **Table 21** list all species of Reptile which could possibly occur on the study site. All Amphibian species are of Least Concern (LC), except for the Giant Bullfrog (*Pyxicephalus adspersus*) which is of special conservation concern and protected under NEMBA. No Red Listed or protected reptile species are known to occur on site.

### **Wetland Areas**

In terms of Section 1 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA), wetlands are legally defined as: “land which is transitional between terrestrial and aquatic systems where the water table is usually at or near the surface, or the land is periodically covered with shallow water, and which land in normal circumstances supports or would support vegetation typically adapted to life in saturated soil” (NWA 1998).

Wetlands are defined by the presence of unique soils and vegetation that do not occur in terrestrial and purely aquatic environments (Edwards *et al.* 2018). Wetland soils are referred to as hydric soils that develop under anaerobic conditions (condition where oxygen is virtually absent from the soil). Wetlands are also typically characterized by relatively large and dense stands of plants sticking out of shallow water or wet soil. Plants adapted to such waterlogged conditions are referred to as hydrophytes. Wetlands are distinct from true aquatic ecosystems like river ecosystems, which are characterized by fast flowing water within channels, and lake ecosystems, that are flooded to great depth; both of which are not primarily characterized by the occurrence of hydric soils and hydrophytes.

A wide variety of wetland types are present in South Africa, and can be classified into six broad types, namely floodplain wetlands, unchannelled valley bottom wetlands, channelled valley bottom wetlands, seeps, depressions and wetland flats. Owing to the large variations in climate and topography across South Africa, vegetation and habitat associated with these wetland types vary tremendously from subtropical reed beds and tall swamp forests to arid salt pans, which all support unique and varied animal life.

**Figure 10** illustrates all wetland types associated with the study site. On the proposed area there is a Floodplain wetland and a Depression. The wetland vegetation types forms part of the Upper Namma Karoo (**Figure 11**).









Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

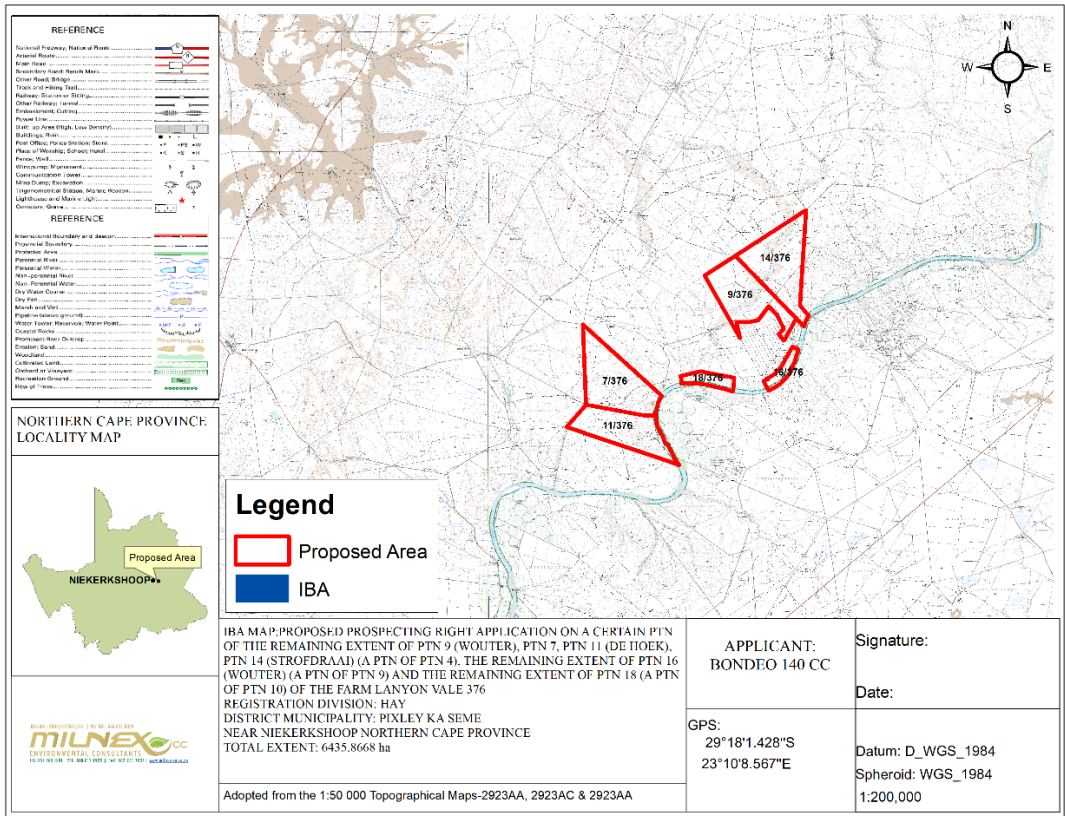


Figure 12: Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas associated with the study site.

**River Ecosystem Status**

According to Figure 13, the status of the Orange river and tributaries are classed Moderately Modified (Class C).

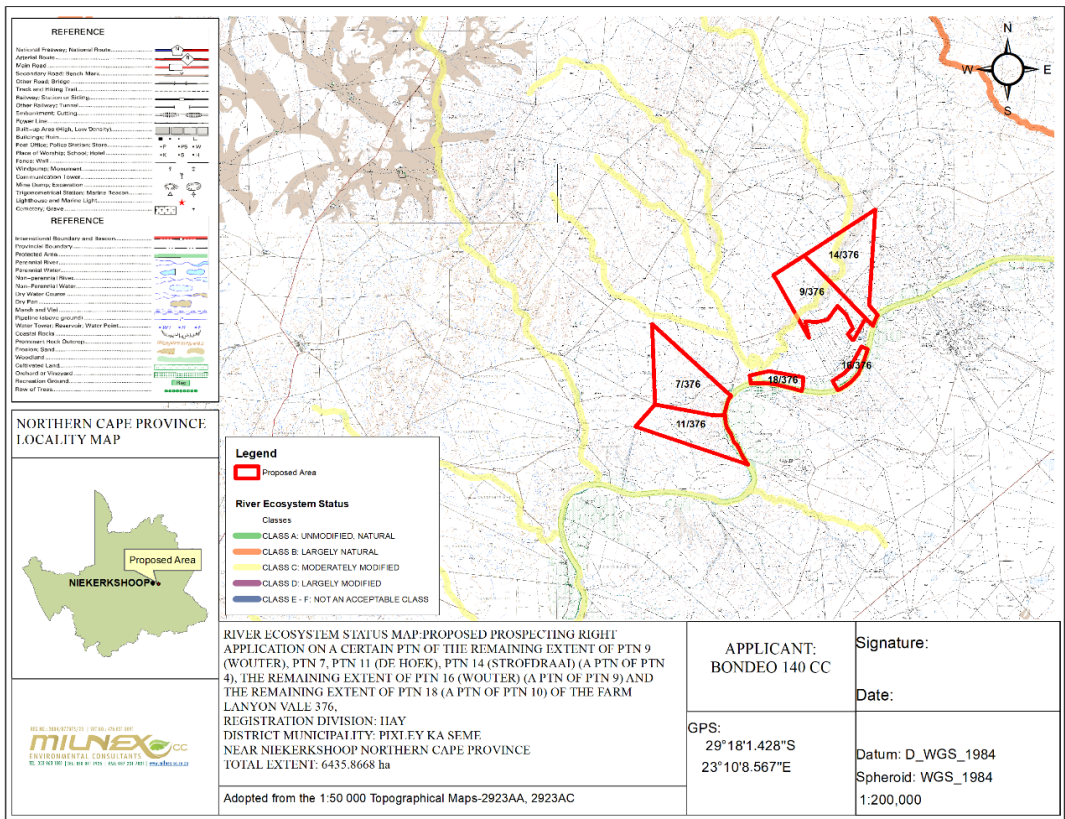


Figure 13: Ecosystem status of the rivers occurring in close proximity to the study site.

According to the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment specialist study, one Perennial Riparian area (the Orange River), and several major episodic drainage areas, along with the Lanyon Spruit, were recorded on the study site. The Orange River is classed as a Perennial River, which has continual surface water flow. The drainage lines receive and retain enough water to support riparian characteristics throughout the year. One (1) wetland type was identified, namely depressions. This pan is dry most of the year.

Several central pivots used for crop farming are located within and/or in close proximity to the riparian area. The watercourse features identified during the site visit can be divided into the following Hydrogeomorphic Units (HGM units)

The study site is located directly north of a section of the perennial riparian Orange River. Numerous episodic drainage features were also identified within the surrounding area of the study site.

Calculated buffer zones were based on prospecting operations for the watercourses, and were calculated as follows:

- Perennial Orange River: 180 m (Operational Phase)
- Episodic Drainage Line: 65 m (Operational Phase)

The buffer zone identified in this report serves to highlight an ecologically sensitive area in which no activities should be conducted.

### Floodline

A Floodline Assessment Report was compiled by Marco Morelli from Milnex CC. Please see the findings below.

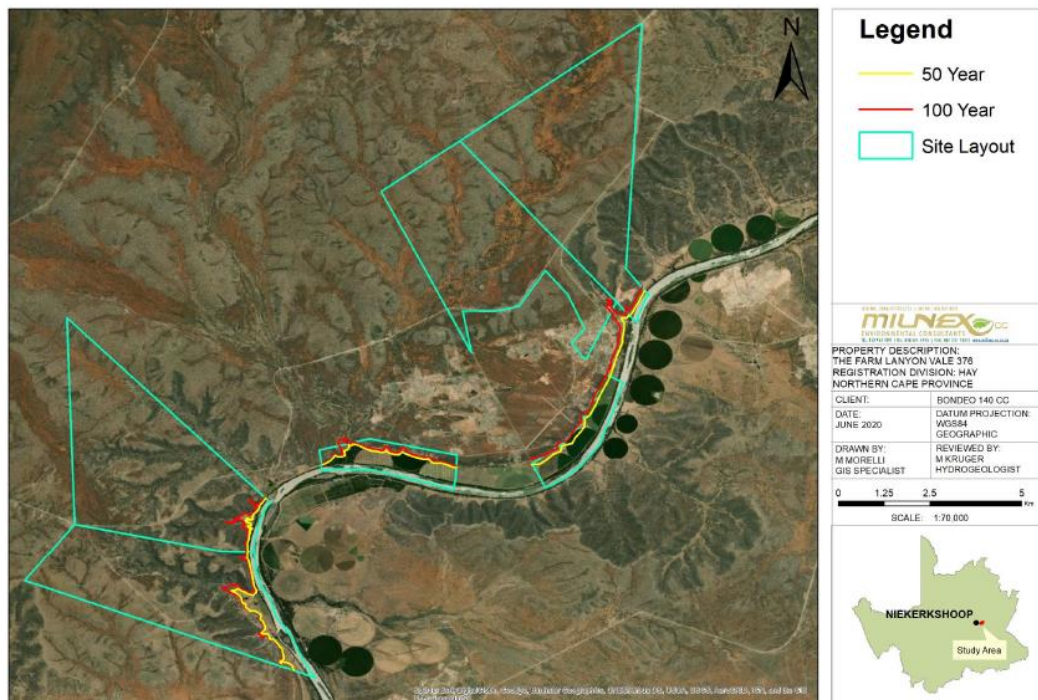
Summary of the delineated 1:50 year and 1: 100-year floodlines are showcased in the Figure below.

Table 22: Characterisation of the watercourse features of the study area

Feature	Level 1: System	Level 2: Regional Setting	Level 3: Landscape Unit	Level 4: Hydrogeomorphic (HGM) Unit
Orange River	Inland System: An aquatic ecosystem with no existing connection to the ocean.	Ecoregion: Nama Karoo  NFEPA WetVeg Group: Eastern Kalahari Bushveld Group 3	Plain	River: Lowland river with active channel & riparian zone
Episodic Drainage Areas			Steep hill slopes	Drainage Line: Lowland river with active channel & riparian zone
Depression Pans			Plain: An extensive area of low relief. These areas are generally characterised by relatively level, gently undulating or uniformly sloping land with a very gentle gradient that is not located within a valley. Gradient is typically less than 0.01 or 1:100.	Depression: Small (deflationary) depressions which are circular or oval; usually found on the crest positions in the landscape. The topographic catchment area can usually be well-defined (i.e. a small catchment area following the surrounding watershed). Although often apparently endorheic (inward draining), many pans are "leaky" in the sense that they are hydrologically connected to adjacent valley bottoms through subsurface diffuse flow paths. The depression pan identified has a closed catchment.



Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.



**Figure 14:** Return Flood Peaks (Please see **Appendix 12** for the map in colour in Floodline Assessment Report)

As seen in the figure above, part of the 1:50 and 1:100 flood peaks extend across the farm boundaries adjacent to the river.

### **Recommendation**

It is recommended that the placement of infrastructure should adhere to the GN704 of the South African National Water Act (36 of 1998) and not be located within the 1:100- year Return Period flood line. This is essential for the safety of human life as well as for the protection of infrastructure from flood inundation and destruction.

If it is planned to mine within in the flood peak areas, it is recommended that the client apply for 21(c) & (i) water-uses as part of the Water Use License Application (WULA).

### **Baseline Hydrogeological Investigation**

A Baseline Hydrogeological Investigation specialist study was compiled by Marietjie Kruger from Milnex CC. Please see the findings below:

Twenty-two (22) boreholes (LV-BH1 – BH22) were identified during field investigation conducted between the 26th and 27th May 2020. Groundwater was mainly used for stock watering and domestic use. Irrigation water is mainly sourced from the Orange River.

Groundwater samples were collected from LV-BH9, LV-BH12, LV BH13 and LV-BH19. Based on elevated and non-compliant chloride, sulphate and nitrate groundwater abstracted from LVBH9, LV-BH13 and LV-BH19 is not suitable for human consumption without treatment.

Based on the Prospecting Work Programme (PWP), trenches and pits will be 5m deep with possible maximum depth of 8m. Due to groundwater levels ranging between 10.1 and 26.9mbgl, measured during the borehole survey, no groundwater inflow is expected.

Process water will be sourced from the Orange River. Based on the laboratory analysis of the Orange River abstraction point, no major constituents of concern were identified. The water from the Orange River is therefore suited for use during mining activities.

The following recommendations were made:

- It is recommended that stormwater management and water recycling be implemented to ensure water runoff are limited to downgradient water bodies or water users;
- Based on the groundwater laboratory results, consumption of water from LV-BH9, LVBH13 and LV-BH19 is not suitable for human consumption without treatment;

Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

- *Given the low likelihood for the tailings material to impact on the groundwater, it is recommended that motivation is provided for a Type 4 Classification;*
- *Groundwater Monitoring should be undertaken in accordance with SANS and DWS requirements in line with the recommended schedule. LV-BH12 and BH13 are recommended to be monitored; and*
- *An annual compliance report should be compiled and submitted to the authorities for evaluation and comment. The monitoring network should be updated annually, and this report should be submitted annually.*

### **Archaeological and Cultural Heritage**

Special attention was given to the identification of possible cultural / heritage and palaeontological resources on site. A Phase 1 Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment was conducted by Dr. J. A. van Schalkwyk and a Palaeontological Desktop Assessment compiled by E. Butler from Banzai Environmental (Pty) Ltd. Please see their findings below:

#### **Phase 1 Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment**

##### Identified sites

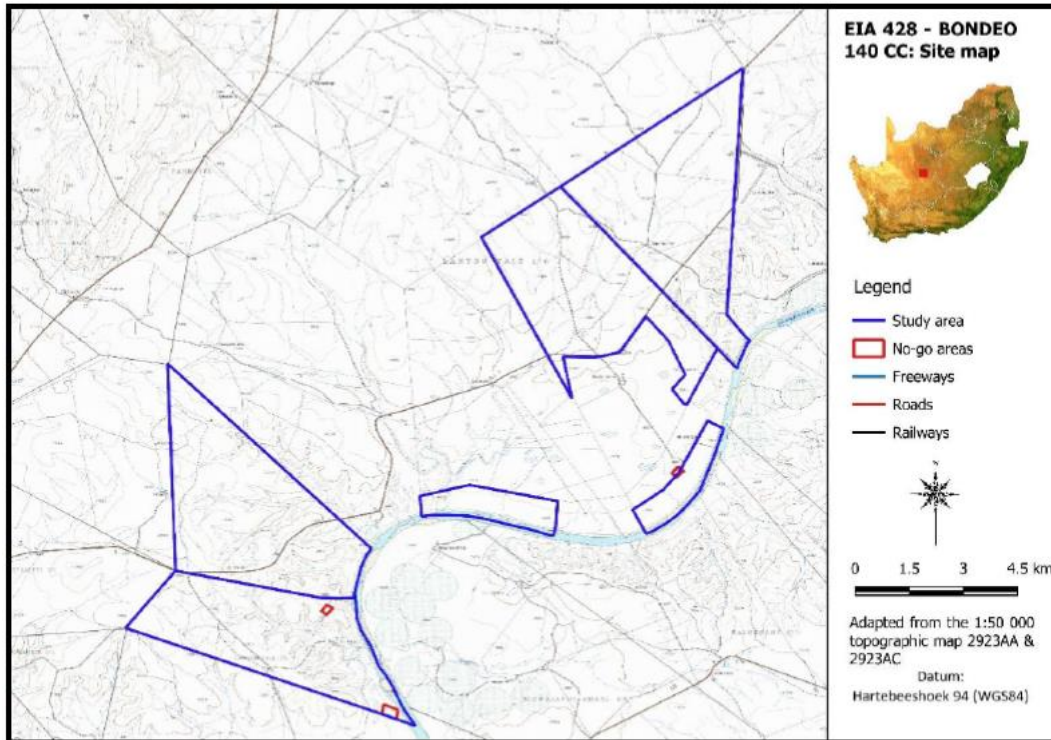
*Based on the survey and what was identified, within the framework of the proposed prospecting activities, three areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These sites are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.*

*Significant gravel terraces containing banded iron stone (Jaspelite) occur in or near the study area. Due to its general availability, this seems to have been the preferred material in this region, especially for use during the Middle Stone Age. However, lithics made from quartzite are also found. At Wouterspan, the gravel terrace occurs approximately 20-40m above the Orange River and appear to have been deposited in a braided river environment. The further away one moves from the river, off from the river terraces, the less such material is found, with a concurrent diminishing presence of Stone Age lithics. Based on the survey and what was identified, within the framework of the proposed prospecting activities, three areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These sites are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.*

**Site 1:** *Some poorly formed stone tools, classified as side- and end scrapers, dating to the Middle Stone Age was identified on the lower terrace of the Orange River. The material used is banded iron stone. Significant of this area is the presence of a single Early Stone Age hand-axe, the only one found in all of the various sections of the study area. Coordinates: S 29,34038; E 23,18431*

**Site 2:** *A large area, high on a ridge, directly above the Orange River. The lithics date to the Middle Stone Age and scrapers, blades, flakes and cores were identified. Of significance here is the fact that the material used is not only banded ironstone, but quartzite as well. Coordinates: S 29,37419; E 23,09825*

**Site 3:** *An area on the lower terrace where a high density of MSA lithics occur. The material used is mostly banded iron stone, although a few pieces made from quartzite were also recorded. Tools, flakes and cores were identified. Coordinates: S 29,39984; E 23,11374*



**Figure 15:** Location of heritage sites in the study area (Please see **Appendix 12** for the colour map in the HIA.)

Impact assessment and proposed mitigation measures

Impact analysis of cultural heritage resources under threat of the proposed prospecting activities is based on the present understanding of the project:

Site No.	Site type	NHRA category	Field rating	Impact rating: Before/After mitigation
7.1.1	Archaeological material	Section 35	Generally protected: Medium significance – Grade IV-B	Medium (52) Low (18)

Mitigation measures:

- The three identified areas are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities and should be avoided
  - Avoidance/Preserve: This is viewed to be the primary form of mitigation and the site should be retained in situ and a buffer zone should be created around it, either temporary (by means of danger tape) or permanently (wire fence or built wall).

Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should be authorised:

- From a heritage point of view, it is recommended that the proposed prospecting activities be allowed to continue on acceptance of the proposed mitigation measures and the conditions proposed below.

**Palaeontological Desktop Assessment**

Summary of Impacts

The expected duration of the impact is assessed as potentially permanent to long term. In the absence of mitigation procedures (should fossil material be present within the affected area) the damage or destruction of any palaeontological materials will be permanent. Impacts on palaeontological heritage during the construction phase could potentially occur but are regarded as having a low probability. The significance of the impact occurring will be low.

Findings and Recommendations

The development is underlain by the Miocene to Recent Cenozoic Kalahari Group which are underlain by sediments of the Dwyka Group. The Palaeontological Sensitivity of the Kalahari Group is low and that of the Dwyka Group is low (Almond and Pether 2008, SAHRIS website). It is therefore considered that the proposed mining development is deemed appropriate and feasible and

Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

*will not lead to detrimental impacts on the palaeontological resources of the area. Thus, the construction and operation of the mine may be authorised as the development footprint is not considered sensitive in terms of palaeontological resources.*

*If fossil remains are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the ECO/site manager in charge of these developments must be informed immediately. These discoveries ought to be secured (preferably in situ) and the ECO/site manager ought to alert SAHRA so that appropriate mitigation (documented and collection) can be undertaken by a professional palaeontologist.*

*The specialist would need a collection permit from SAHRA. Fossil material must be curated in an approved collection (museum or university) and all fieldwork and reports should meet the minimum standards for palaeontological impact studies developed by SAHRA.*

## **Description of the socio-economic environment**

### **• Socio-economic conditions**

#### **Siyathemba Local Municipality**

Siyathemba Municipality contributed 11.9% to the District population (i.e. the second largest Local Municipality in the District by population) and 1.9% to the population of the Northern Cape.

The most dominant population group is Coloured<sup>4</sup>. This group represents 80% of the total population in the municipal area. The other groups are black (12%) and white (8%).

Afrikaans is the most widely spoken language (78%). There are an insignificant number of people which speaks other languages. A total of 824 people indicated that IsiNdebele is their first language and 91 people speak Setswana.

#### Unemployment

There has been a decrease in the number of people employed and a concomitant increase in the number of unemployed in the district between these the 2001 and 2011 censuses. This is directly related to the number of businesses that has closed in the region during the period reflected and indicates the need for a retention or wholesale and retail strategy regarding these businesses. Unemployment reaching approximately 28.3% 2011 and Youth unemployment reaching 35.4% in 2011 as per Stats SA 2011 Census.

#### Regional Gross Domestic Product

The district contribution to the provincial GDP has consistently been the lowest over recent years with its contribution declining from 10,6% to 9,6% between 2003 and 2004. The economy is predominantly primary sector focused with manufacturing and tourism also contributing to the district economy.

The economic sectors that contribute the most to the GDP of Pixley Ka Seme are Agriculture, Mining, Tourism and Manufacturing.

Table 20 below represents the percentage contribution per economic sector by the district to the gross domestic product of the province for 2003 and 2004.

**Table 20: % GDP of district municipalities per economic sector for 2003 and 2004**

	% OF GDP									
	Primary		Secondary		Tertiary		Taxes - Subsidies		Total GDP	
	2003	2004	2003	2004	2003	2004	2003	2004	2003	2004
Namakwa	4,3	3,8	0,5	0,4	7,3	7,0	0,7	0,8	12,8	12,1
PKSDM	3,1	2,7	1,0	0,9	5,8	5,2	0,8	0,8	10,6	9,6
Siyanda	3,8	3,3	1,3	1,3	8,0	7,7	1,1	1,2	14,2	13,5
Frances Baard	6,8	6,2	3,2	3,1	26,1	28,6	2,5	2,0	38,6	40,7
Kgalagadi	16,7	16,5	1,4	1,3	4,9	5,5	0,7	0,8	23,8	24,1
NC GDP	34,7	32,6	7,3	7,1	52,1	54,0	5,8	5,6	100,0	100,0

Pixley Ka Seme's total percentage contribution in 2003 was 10,6% and declined to 9,64% in 2004. The district contribution to the GDP has consistently been the lowest over recent years with its contribution declining. It is evident that the tertiary sector contributes the greatest percentage to the GDP of the Northern Cape, followed by the primary sector and then the secondary sector.



The Pixley Ka Seme district displays a similar characteristic as the province with respect to its sectoral contributions to GDP; the economic sectors that contribute the most to the GDP of Pixley Ka Seme are Agriculture, Mining, Tourism and Manufacturing, with its secondary sector contribution being the least. The manufacturing sector is part of the secondary sector which indicates that it has declined over the period of 2003 (0, 97%) and in 2004 (0, 92%).

Pixley Ka Seme’s total percentage contribution in 2003 was 10,6% and declined to 9,64% in 2004. The district contribution to the GDP has consistently been the lowest over recent years with its contribution declining. It is evident that the tertiary sector contributes the greatest percentage to the GDP of the Northern Cape, followed by the primary sector and then the secondary sector.

The Pixley Ka Seme district displays a similar characteristic as the province with respect to its sectoral contributions to GDP; the economic sectors that contribute the most to the GDP of Pixley Ka Seme are Agriculture, Mining, Tourism and Manufacturing, with its secondary sector contribution being the least. The manufacturing sector is part of the secondary sector which indicates that it has declined over the period of 2003 (0, 97%) and in 2004 (0, 92%). To transform and diversify the status of the districts economy will require a concerted effort to improve and create development opportunities within this sector.

#### Location Quotient

A comparative advantage indicates a relatively more competitive production function for a product or service in specific economy than the aggregate economy. This economy therefore renders this service more efficiently. The location quotient is an indication of the comparative advantage of an economy in terms of its production and employment. A location quotient greater than 1 indicates a comparative advantage regarding the sector in one location with respect to another.

The analysis below indicates the location quotient of the Pixley ka Seme District with respect to the Northern Cape Province. The table and graph below indicates the location quotients of sectors in the district municipality with respect to the Northern Cape.

Sectors in the economy of Pixley Ka Seme that have a location quotient larger than 1 are agriculture (2, 35); community, social and personal services (1, 19); transport, storage and communication (1, 16); electricity, gas and water supply (2, 19). These indicate sectors that show potential for additional development in this does not imply that sectors, that do not feature here, should not be pursued since there may be latent potential in these sectors that could be exploited.

Table 21 below indicates the location quotients of the economic sectors in the municipalities

**Table 21: Location Quotients of Economic Sectors**

	Kareeberg	Emthanjeni	DMA	Renosterberg	Siyancuma	Siyathemba	Thembellhle	Ubuntu	Umsobomvu
<b>Agriculture</b>	1,18	0,31	1,62	0,54	1,11	1,46	1,47	1,59	0,82
<b>Mining</b>	0,08	0,05	0,45	0,00	4,28	0,09	0,02	0,21	0,00
<b>Manufacturing</b>	0,41	0,71	1,28	0,13	1,92	0,76	1,99	0,91	0,18
<b>Electricity, gas and water supply</b>	0,17	0,60	0,36	11,42	0,08	1,14	0,23	0,00	0,97
<b>Construction</b>	0,52	1,25	0,85	0,58	0,99	1,69	0,48	0,55	1,00
<b>Wholesale and retail trade</b>	1,12	1,05	1,20	0,56	1,02	0,94	1,17	0,79	1,13
<b>Transport, storage and communication</b>	0,52	1,76	0,53	0,33	0,84	0,83	1,33	0,75	0,51
<b>Finance, insurance, real estate</b>	1,06	1,79	0,94	0,46	0,78	0,71	0,61	0,72	0,67
<b>Community, social and personal services</b>	1,18	1,37	0,58	0,54	0,82	0,72	0,56	0,85	1,55

Other sectors in the district that have a distinct comparative advantage with respect to the Northern Cape and South Africa are:

- Electricity, Gas and Water supply
- Community, social and personal services
- Transport, storage and communication

The municipalities in the district that have comparative advantages with respect to the sector Electricity, Gas and Water supply are Renosterberg and Siyathemba with location quotients of 11,42 and 1,14 respectively. This resounding comparative advantage in

Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

the sector for the Renosterberg municipality is due to the presence of the Van Der Kloof Dam in the municipality. It is the only sector in which Renosterberg has a comparative advantage with respect to other municipalities in the district.

Kareeberg, Emthanjeni and Umsobomvu have location quotients, with respect to other municipalities in the district, of 1, 18, 1, 37 and 1, 55 respectively in the Community, social and personal services sector. In the Transport, storage and communication sector, Emthanjeni and Thembelihle have location quotients of 1, 76 and 1, 33 respectively, indicating a comparative advantage in this sector with respect to other municipalities in the district. The sectors that contribute significantly to the Northern Cape GDP are highlighted in the table above with agriculture having the highest LQ, Electricity, gas and water supply second highest LQ etc.

The agricultural sector has the potential for growth with a number of comparative and competitive advantages for the Northern Cape and Pixley Ka Seme in particular.

**Tress Indicators**

The level of diversification or concentration of a region’s economy is measured by a tress index. A tress index of zero represents a totally diversified economy whilst the higher the index, the more concentrated or vulnerable the region’s economy is to exogenous variables e.g. adverse climatic conditions and commodity price fluctuations.

The economy of the Pixley Ka Seme district has a tress index of 56, 18 indicating a reliance of the Pixley Ka Seme economy on the agriculture, transport and services sector. This tress index indicates that the economy is not diversified but is largely dependent on the agriculture and is vulnerable to exogenous variables such as adverse climatic conditions, commodity price fluctuations. We need to look at ways of diversifying the economy

**Land capability**

The proposed development falls within an area used for grazing and central pivot crop production. Because of climate conditions the site is considered to have limited environmental sensitivity as a result. The National Department of Agriculture (2006) classified land capability into two broad categories, namely land suited to cultivation (Classes I – IV) and land with limited use, generally not suited to cultivation (Classes V – VIII). The site falls within Class VII and therefore the agricultural potential of the site is limited and it is unlikely that the change in land use will impact significantly on agricultural production (AGIS, 2016). However there are areas of the proposed site which are under central pivot irrigation systems.

Refer to Land capability map attached as **Appendix 5 & figure 16 below.**

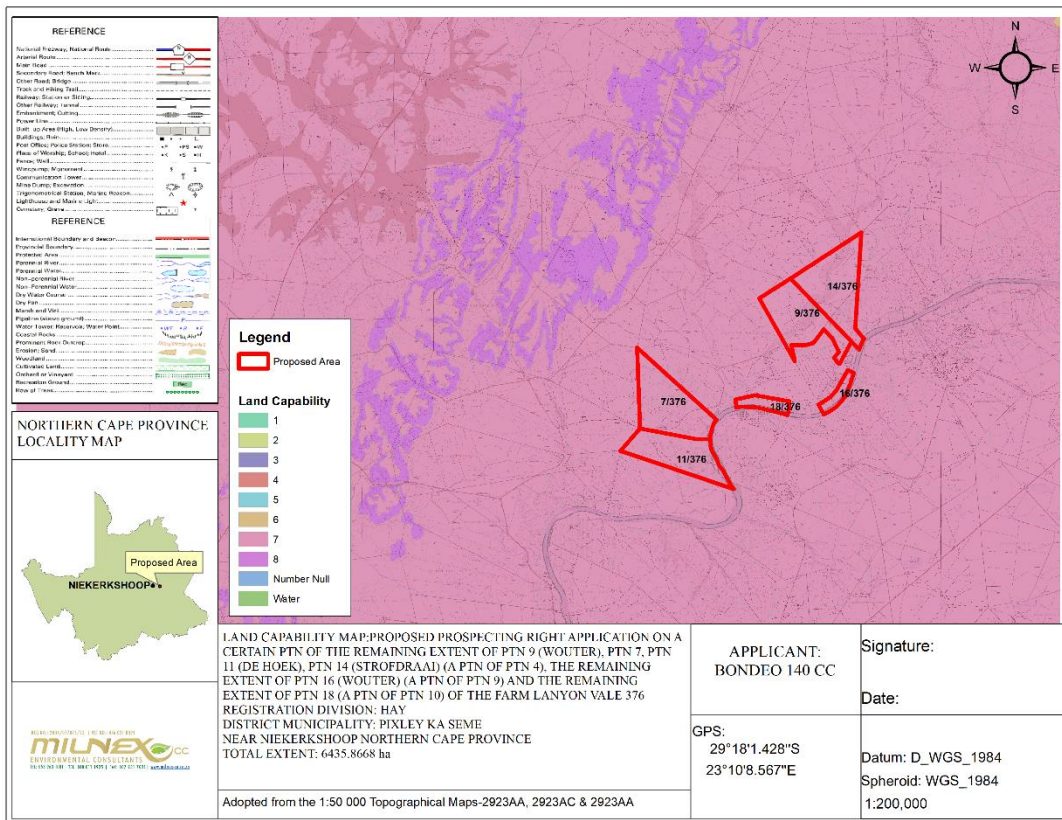


Figure 16: Land capability

**(b) Description of the current land uses.**

The site is largely natural with some areas covered by cultivation, mining and waterbodies according to the below map, (Figure 17).

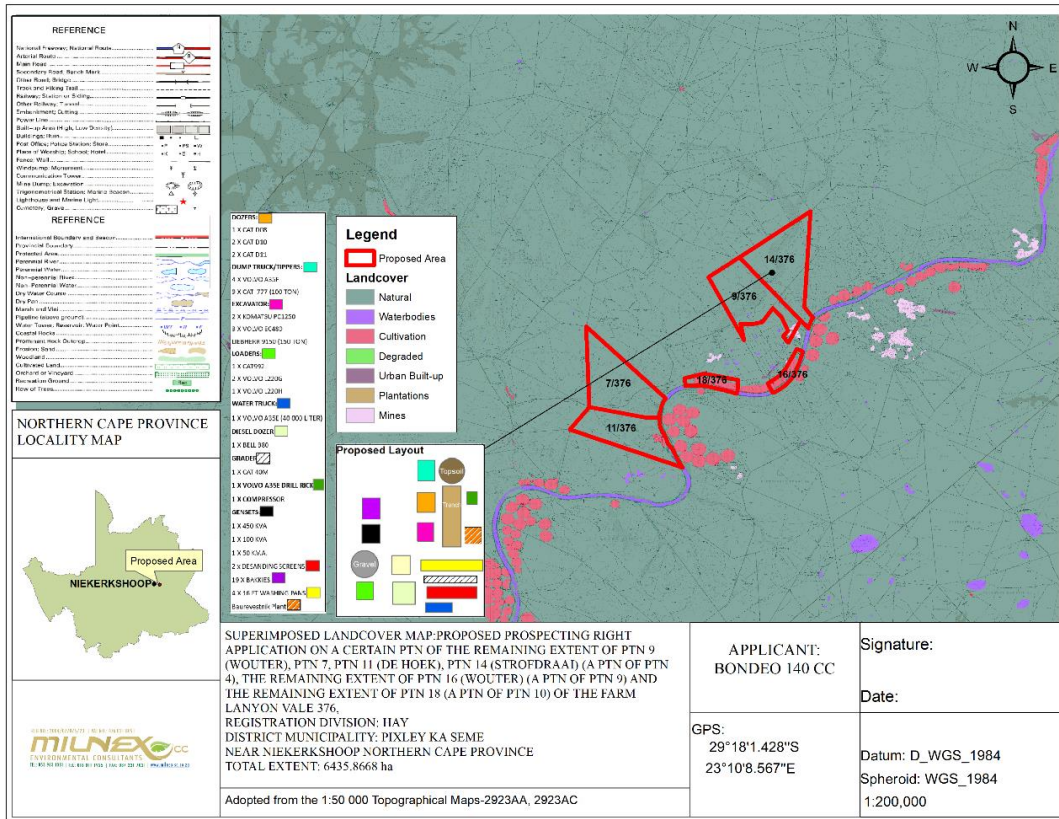


Figure 17: Land cover associated with study site and surrounding areas.

**v) The impacts and risks identified including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts, including the degree to which these impacts—**

- (aa) can be reversed;
- (bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and
- (cc) can be avoided, managed or mitigated;

Please see heading J) AN ASSESSMENT OF EACH IDENTIFIED POTENTIALLY SIGNIFICANT IMPACT AND RISK, for the impacts identified and their assessment.

**vi) the methodology used in determining and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks;**

**Method of environmental assessment**

The environmental assessment aims to identify the various possible environmental impacts that could result from the proposed development. Different impacts need to be evaluated in terms of its significance and in doing so highlight the most critical issues to be addressed.

Significance is determined through a synthesis of impact characteristics which include context and intensity of an impact. Context refers to the geographical scale i.e. site, local, national or global whereas intensity is defined by the severity of the impact e.g. the



magnitude of deviation from background conditions, the size of the area affected, the duration of the impact and the overall probability of occurrence. Significance is calculated as shown in the Table below.

Significance is an indication of the importance of the impact in terms of both physical extent and time scale, and therefore indicates the level of mitigation required. The total number of points scored for each impact indicates the level of significance of the impact.

### **Impact Rating System**

Impact assessment must take account of the nature, scale and duration of impacts on the environment whether such impacts are positive or negative. Each impact is also assessed according to the following project phases:

- Construction
- Operation
- Decommissioning

Where necessary, the proposal for mitigation or optimisation of an impact should be detailed. A brief discussion of the impact and the rationale behind the assessment of its significance should also be included. The rating system is applied to the potential impacts on the receiving environment and includes an objective evaluation of the mitigation of the impact. In assessing the significance of each impact the following criteria is used:

**Table: The rating system**

NATURE		
Include a brief description of the impact of environmental parameter being assessed in the context of the project. This criterion includes a brief written statement of the environmental aspect being impacted upon by a particular action or activity.		
GEOGRAPHICAL EXTENT		
This is defined as the area over which the impact will be experienced.		
1	Site	The impact will only affect the site.
2	Local/district	Will affect the local area or district.
3	Province/region	Will affect the entire province or region.
4	International and National	Will affect the entire country.
PROBABILITY		
This describes the chance of occurrence of an impact.		
1	Unlikely	The chance of the impact occurring is extremely low (Less than a 25% chance of occurrence).
2	Possible	The impact may occur (Between a 25% to 50% chance of occurrence).
3	Probable	The impact will likely occur (Between a 50% to 75% chance of occurrence).
4	Definite	Impact will certainly occur (Greater than a 75% chance of occurrence).
DURATION		
This describes the duration of the impacts. Duration indicates the lifetime of the impact as a result of the proposed activity.		
1	Short term	The impact will either disappear with mitigation or will be mitigated through natural processes in a span shorter than the construction phase (0 – 1 years), or the impact will last for the period of a relatively short construction period and a limited recovery time after construction, thereafter it will be entirely negated (0 – 2 years).
2	Medium term	The impact will continue or last for some time after the construction phase but will be mitigated by direct human action or by natural processes thereafter (2 – 10 years).
3	Long term	The impact and its effects will continue or last for the entire operational life of the development, but will be mitigated by direct human action or by natural processes thereafter (10 – 30 years).

4	Permanent	The only class of impact that will be non-transitory. Mitigation either by man or natural process will not occur in such a way or such a time span that the impact can be considered indefinite.
<b>INTENSITY/ MAGNITUDE</b>		
Describes the severity of an impact.		
1	Low	Impact affects the quality, use and integrity of the system/component in a way that is barely perceptible.
2	Medium	Impact alters the quality, use and integrity of the system/component but system/component still continues to function in a moderately modified way and maintains general integrity (some impact on integrity).
3	High	Impact affects the continued viability of the system/ component and the quality, use, integrity and functionality of the system or component is severely impaired and may temporarily cease. High costs of rehabilitation and remediation.
4	Very high	Impact affects the continued viability of the system/component and the quality, use, integrity and functionality of the system or component permanently ceases and is irreversibly impaired. Rehabilitation and remediation often impossible. If possible rehabilitation and remediation often unfeasible due to extremely high costs of rehabilitation and remediation.
<b>REVERSIBILITY</b>		
This describes the degree to which an impact can be successfully reversed upon completion of the proposed activity.		
1	Completely reversible	The impact is reversible with implementation of minor mitigation measures.
2	Partly reversible	The impact is partly reversible but more intense mitigation measures are required.
3	Barely reversible	The impact is unlikely to be reversed even with intense mitigation measures.
4	Irreversible	The impact is irreversible and no mitigation measures exist.
<b>IRREPLACEABLE LOSS OF RESOURCES</b>		
This describes the degree to which resources will be irreplaceably lost as a result of a proposed activity.		
1	No loss of resource	The impact will not result in the loss of any resources.
2	Marginal loss of resource	The impact will result in marginal loss of resources.
3	Significant loss of resources	The impact will result in significant loss of resources.
4	Complete loss of resources	The impact is result in a complete loss of all resources.
<b>CUMULATIVE EFFECT</b>		
This describes the cumulative effect of the impacts. A cumulative impact is an effect which in itself may not be significant but may become significant if added to other existing or potential impacts emanating from other similar or diverse activities as a result of the project activity in question.		
1	Negligible cumulative impact	The impact would result in negligible to no cumulative effects.
2	Low cumulative impact	The impact would result in insignificant cumulative effects.
3	Medium cumulative impact	The impact would result in minor cumulative effects.
4	High cumulative impact	The impact would result in significant cumulative effects
<b>SIGNIFICANCE</b>		
Significance is determined through a synthesis of impact characteristics. Significance is an indication of the importance of the impact in terms of both physical extent and time scale, and therefore indicates the level of mitigation required. The calculation of the significance of an impact uses the following formula:  (Extent + probability + reversibility + irreplaceability + duration + cumulative effect) x magnitude/intensity.		

The summation of the different criteria will produce a non-weighted value. By multiplying this value with the magnitude/intensity, the resultant value acquires a weighted characteristic which can be measured and assigned a significance rating.		
Points	Impact significance rating	Description
6 to 28	Negative low impact	The anticipated impact will have negligible negative effects and will require little to no mitigation.
6 to 28	Positive low impact	The anticipated impact will have minor positive effects.
29 to 50	Negative medium impact	The anticipated impact will have moderate negative effects and will require moderate mitigation measures.
29 to 50	Positive medium impact	The anticipated impact will have moderate positive effects.
51 to 73	Negative high impact	The anticipated impact will have significant effects and will require significant mitigation measures to achieve an acceptable level of impact.
51 to 73	Positive high impact	The anticipated impact will have significant positive effects.
74 to 96	Negative very high impact	The anticipated impact will have highly significant effects and are unlikely to be able to be mitigated adequately. These impacts could be considered "fatal flaws".
74 to 96	Positive very high impact	The anticipated impact will have highly significant positive effects.

**vii) Positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity and alternatives will have on the environment and on the community that may be affected focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;**

- Increased ambient noise levels resulting from geophysics site fly-overs and increased traffic movement during all prospecting phases.
- Potential water and soil pollution impacts resulting from hydrocarbon spills and soil erosion which may impact on environmental resources utilized by communities, landowners and other stakeholders.
- Potential water and soil pollution impacts resulting from hydrocarbon spills and soil erosion which may impact on ecosystem functioning.
- Increased vehicle activity with in the area resulting in the possible destruction and disturbance of fauna and flora.
- Poor access control to farms which may impact on cattle movement, breeding and grazing practices.
- Access control to portion which may impact on cattle movement, breeding and grazing practices of the surrounding community.
- Influx of persons (job seekers) to site as a result of increased activity and the possible resultant increase in opportunistic crime.
- Potential visual impacts caused by prospecting activities.
- Prospecting will be undertaken by specialist sub - contractors and it is not anticipated that employment opportunities for local and / or regional communities will result from the prospecting activities.
- Negative impacts on the groundwater resources.
- Longterm loss of indigenous vegetation.
- Airpollution due to dust to the surrounding community and hospital.
- Impact on tourism.

**viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied and level of residual risk;**

(With regard to the issues and concerns raised by affected parties provide a list of the issues raised and an assessment/discussion of the mitigations or site layout alternatives available to accommodate or address their concerns, together with an assessment of the impacts or risks associated with the mitigation or alternatives considered).

Adverse environmental associated with the prospecting activity have been identified through the Scoping & EIR process. Mitigation measures as set out in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) attached in Part B must be implemented in order to minimise any potential impacts.

All comments received during the review period of the Scoping and EIR report, as well as response provided is captured and recorded within the Comments and Response Report and will be attached in the final EIR.

**ix) if no alternative development [location] footprints for the activity were investigated, the motivation for not considering such; and**

As discussed in the previous section, based on outcomes of previous studies in the vicinity of the proposed site, it is expected that high volumes of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

**x) a concluding statement indicating the location of the preferred alternative development [location] footprint within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report;**

(Provide a statement motivating the final site layout that is proposed)

Design alternatives were considered throughout the planning and design phase (i.e. where is the rock bed located?). In this regard discussions on the design were held between the EAP and the developer. The layout follows the limitations of the site and aspects such as, roads, site offices and workshop area as well as fencing.

**I. A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS UNDERTAKEN TO IDENTIFY, ASSESS AND RANK THE IMPACTS THE ACTIVITY AND ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES AND INFRASTRUCTURE WILL IMPOSE ON THE PREFERRED [LOCATION] DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT ON THE APPROVED SITE**

(AS CONTEMPLATED IN THE ACCEPTED SCOPING REPORT THROUGH THE LIFE OF THE ACTIVITY, INCLUDING—.)

**i. A description of all environmental issues and risks that are identified during the environmental impact assessment process**

**Process for the identification of key issues**

The methodology for the identification of key issues aims, as far as possible, to provide a user-friendly analysis of information to allow for easy interpretation.

- **Checklist:** The checklist consists of a list of structured questions related to the environmental parameters and specific human actions. They assist in ordering thinking, data collection, presentation and alert against the omission of possible impacts.
- **Matrix:** The matrix analysis provides a holistic indication of the relationship and interaction between the various activities, development phases and the impact thereof on the environment. The method aims at providing a first order cause and effect relationship between the environment and the proposed activity. The matrix is designed to indicate the relationship between the different stressors and receptors which leads to specific impacts. The matrix also indicates the specialist studies, which will be submitted as part of the Environmental Impact Report in order to address the potentially most significant impacts.

**Checklist analysis**

The site visit was conducted to ensure a proper analysis of the site specific characteristics of the study area. The table below provides a checklist, which is designed to stimulate thought regarding possible consequences of specific actions and so assist scoping of key issues. It consists of a list of structured questions related to the environmental parameters and specific human actions. They assist in ordering thinking, data collection, presentation and alert against the omission of possible impacts. The table highlights certain issues, which are further analysed in matrix format.

**Table:** Environmental checklist

QUESTION	YES	NO	Un- sure	Description
<b>1. Are any of the following located on the site earmarked for the development?</b>				
I. A river, stream, dam or wetland	X			The Orange River borders the proposed area and according to the Wetland types map it is a Floodplain wetland. According to the River Ecosystem map the river is moderately modified and falls within Class C. (Appendix 7).
II. A conservation or open space area		X		
III. An area that is of cultural importance	X			According to the HIA, three (3) areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region.  <b>Site 1:</b> Coordinates: S 29,34038; E 23,18431 <b>Site 2:</b> Coordinates: S 29,37419; E 23,09825 <b>Site 3:</b> Coordinates: S 29,39984; E 23,11374  The three identified areas are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities and should be avoided.
IV. Site of geological significance		X		According to the Palaeontological Desktop Assessment the development is underlain by the Miocene to Recent Cenozoic Kalahari Group which are underlain by sediments of the Dwyka Group. The Palaeontological Sensitivity of the Kalahari Group is low and that of the Dwyka Group is low (Almond and Pether 2008, SAHRIS website).
V. Areas of outstanding natural beauty		X		
VI. Highly productive agricultural land			X	According to the land use map and the Land Capability map the proposed area is mostly covered by natural vegetation and falls within land capability Class 7. However, there are certain areas under central pivot irrigation for crop production.
VII. Floodplain	X			The Orange River borders the proposed area and according to the Wetland types map it is a Floodplain wetland.
VIII. Indigenous forest		X		
IX. Grass land	X		X	According to the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment specialist study: <i>the natural veld is dominated by low shrubland and grassland, with sections of dense to open bush, especially in the drainage regions</i>
X. Bird nesting sites			X	According to the Important Bird Areas map (Appendix 7) the proposed area does not fall within an Important Bird Area (IBAs).

XI. Red data species			×	<p>According to the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment specialist study: <i>Shepard's Tree (Boscia albitrunca)</i>, a <i>Protected Tree species of South Africa</i>, was recorded on site, along with the protected <i>Cannon Aloe (Aloe claviflora)</i> and <i>Bushman's Hat (Hoodia gordonii)</i>.</p> <p>Two avifauna species potentially occurring on site, enjoys conservation status in the IUCN Red List, namely <i>Ludwig's Bustard (Neotis ludwigii)</i> and <i>Verreaux's Eagle (Aquila verreauxii)</i>. <i>Ludwig's Bustard</i> is also listed and protected under the <i>Threatened and Protected Species list (ToPS, 2013)</i> which is enforceable under the <i>National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004</i>.</p>
XII. Tourist resort			×	
<b>2. Will the project potentially result in potential?</b>				
I. Removal of people		×		None.
II. Visual Impacts	×			The visual impact will be managed;
III. Noise pollution	×			The noise impact is unlikely to be significant
IV. Construction of an access road		×		None. Access will be obtained from a gravel road off the R386 or R370.
V. Risk to human or valuable ecosystems due to explosion/fire/ discharge of waste into water or air.		×		None.
VI. Accumulation of large workforce (>50 manual workers) into the site.		×		Approximately 15 employment opportunities will be created during the construction and operational phase of the project.
VII. Utilisation of significant volumes of local raw materials such as water, wood etc.	×			The application area will use 4 x 16 feet washing pans, the amount of water for the pans will be 68 000 L/hour from which 30% is re-used.
VIII. Job creation	×			Approximately 15 employment opportunities will be created during the construction and operational phase of the project.
IX. Traffic generation		×		None.
X. Soil erosion	×			Only areas earmarked for mining will be cleared. prospecting will be phased and the topsoil stockpiled separately. Concurrent rehabilitation will take place.
XI. Installation of additional bulk telecommunication transmission lines or facilities		×		None.
<b>3. Is the proposed project located near the following?</b>				
I. A river, stream, dam or wetland	×			The Orange River borders the proposed area.
II. A conservation or open space area		×		
III. An area that is of cultural importance			×	

IV. A site of geological significance		×		According to the Palaeontological Desktop Assessment the development is underlain by the Miocene to Recent Cenozoic Kalahari Group which are underlain by sediments of the Dwyka Group. The Palaeontological Sensitivity of the Kalahari Group is low and that of the Dwyka Group is low (Almond and Pether 2008, SAHRIS website).
V. An area of outstanding natural beauty		×		
VI. Highly productive agricultural land			×	According to the Land Cover map the proposed area and surrounding area is mostly covered by natural vegetation, some areas are under central pivot irrigation for crop production and waterbodies. The Land Capability map indicate the area falls within land capability Class 7.
VII. A tourist resort			×	
VIII. A formal or informal settlement		×		

### Matrix analysis

The matrix describes the relevant listed activities, the aspects of the development that will apply to the specific listed activity, a description of the environmental issues and potential impacts, the significance and magnitude of the potential impacts, and the mitigation of the potential impacts. The matrix also highlights areas of particular concern, which requires more in depth assessment. Each cell is evaluated individually in terms of the nature of the impact, duration and its significance – should no mitigation measures be applied. This is important since many impacts would not be considered insignificant if proper mitigation measures were implemented. The matrix also provides an indication if mitigation measures are available.

In order to conceptualise the different impacts the matrix specify the following:

- **Stressor:** Indicates the aspect of the proposed activity, which initiates and cause impacts on elements of the environment.
- **Receptor:** Highlights the recipient and most important components of the environment affected by the stressor.
- **Impacts:** Indicates the net result of the cause-effect between the stressor and receptor.
- **Mitigation:** Impacts need to be mitigated to minimise the effect on the environment.



ii) An assessment of the significance of each issue and risk and an indication of the extent to which the issue and risk could be avoided or addressed by the adoption of mitigation measures;

LISTED ACTIVITY (The Stressor)	ASPECTS OF THE DEVELOPMENT /ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACTS		SIGNIFICANCE AND MAGNITUDE OF POTENTIAL IMPACTS			MITIGATION OF POTENTIAL IMPACTS	SPECIALIST STUDIES / INFORMATION	
		Receptors	Impact description	Minor	Major	Duration	Possible Mitigation		
<b>CONSTRUCTION PHASE</b>									
<p><b>Listing notice 1 GNR327: Activity 9:</b> The development of infrastructure exceeding 1000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of water or storm water— (i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or (ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more;</p> <p><b>Listing notice 1 GNR 327: Activity 10:</b> The development and related operation of infrastructure exceeding 1 000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of sewage, effluent, process water, waste water, return water, industrial discharge or slimes – (i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or (ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more;</p> <p><b>Listing Notice 1: GNR 327, Activity 19:</b> The infilling or depositing of any material of more than 10 cubic metres into, or the dredging, excavation, removal or moving of soil, sand, shells, shell grit, pebbles or rock of more than 10 cubic metres from: (ii) a watercourse;</p> <p><b>Listing Notice 2, GNR 325, Activity 15:</b> "The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more, of indigenous vegetation."</p> <p><b>Listing Notice 3: GNR 324, Activity 12 (g):</b> Northern Cape; The clearance of an area of 300 square metres or more of indigenous vegetation; ii) Within critical biodiversity areas identified in bioregional plans;</p>	<p><u>Site clearing and preparation</u> Areas earmarked for prospecting will need to be cleared, topsoil will be stockpiled separately.</p>	BIOPHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT	Fauna & Flora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural vegetation.</li> <li>Loss of sensitive species.</li> <li>Loss or fragmentation of habitats.</li> </ul>		-	L	Yes	-
			Air	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Air pollution due to the increase of traffic of construction vehicles.</li> </ul>	-		M	Yes	-
			Soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Soil degradation, including erosion.</li> <li>Loss of topsoil.</li> <li>Disturbance of soils and existing land use (soil compaction).</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			Geology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is not foreseen that the removal of indigenous vegetation will impact on the geology or vice versa.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			Existing services infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Generation of waste that need to be accommodated at a licensed landfill site.</li> <li>Generation of sewage that need to be accommodated by the local sewage plant.</li> </ul>		-	S	Yes	-
			Ground water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pollution due to construction vehicles.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			Surface water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase in storm water run-off.</li> <li>Pollution of water sources due to soil erosion.</li> <li>Destruction of watercourses (pans/dams/streams).</li> </ul>		-	S	Yes	-
		SOCIAL/ECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT	Local unemployment rate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Job creation.</li> <li>Business opportunities.</li> <li>Skills development.</li> </ul>		+	S	Yes	-
			Visual landscape	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Potential visual impact on residents of farmsteads and motorists in close proximity to proposed facility.</li> </ul>	-		L	Yes	-
			Traffic volumes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase in construction vehicles.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			Health & Safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Air/dust pollution.</li> <li>Road safety.</li> <li>Increased risk of veld fires.</li> </ul>		-	S	Yes	-
			Noise levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The generation of noise as a result of construction vehicles, the use of machinery such as drills, excavators, rotary pans, dumper trucks and people working on the site.</li> </ul>	-		L	Yes	-
			Tourism industry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Since there are no tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the construction activities will not have an impact on tourism in the area.</li> </ul>	N/A	N/A	N/A	Yes	-
			Heritage resources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Removal or destruction of archaeological and/or paleontological sites.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-

				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Removal or destruction of buildings, structures, places and equipment of cultural significance.</li> <li>Removal or destruction of graves, cemeteries and burial grounds.</li> </ul>						
<p><b>Listing notice 1 GNR327: Activity 9:</b> The development of infrastructure exceeding 1000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of water or storm water— (i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or (ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more;</p> <p><b>Listing notice 1 GNR 327: Activity 10:</b> The development and related operation of infrastructure exceeding 1 000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of sewage, effluent, process water, waste water, return water, industrial discharge or slimes – (i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or (ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more;</p> <p><b>Listing Notice 1: GNR 327, Activity 19:</b> The infilling or depositing of any material of more than 10 cubic metres into, or the dredging, excavation, removal or moving of soil, sand, shells, shell grit, pebbles or rock of more than 10 cubic metres from: (iii) a watercourse;</p> <p><b>Listing Notice 2, GNR 325, Activity 15:</b> "The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more, of indigenous vegetation."</p> <p><b>Listing Notice 3: GNR 324, Activity 12 (g):</b> Northern Cape; The clearance of an area of 300 square metres or more of indigenous vegetation; ii) Within critical biodiversity areas identified in bioregional plans;</p>	<p><u>Site clearing and preparation</u> Areas earmarked for prospecting will need to be cleared, topsoil will be stockpiled separately. This will inevitably result in the removal of indigenous vegetation located on the site.</p>	BIOPHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT	Fauna & Flora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural vegetation.</li> <li>Loss of sensitive species.</li> <li>Loss or fragmentation of habitats.</li> </ul>		-	L	Yes	-	
			Air quality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Air pollution due to the increase of traffic.</li> </ul>	-		M	Yes	-	
			Soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Soil degradation, including erosion.</li> <li>Disturbance of soils and existing land use (soil compaction).</li> <li>Loss of agricultural potential (low – medium significance relative to agricultural potential of the site).</li> </ul>	-		M	Yes	-	
			Geology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is not foreseen that the removal of indigenous vegetation will impact on the geology or vice versa.</li> </ul>	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-	
			Existing services infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Generation of waste that need to be accommodated at a licensed landfill site.</li> <li>Generation of sewage that need to be accommodated by the local sewage plant.</li> </ul>	-		M	Yes	-	
			Ground water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pollution due to construction vehicles.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-	
			Surface water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase in storm water run-off.</li> <li>Pollution of water sources due to soil erosion.</li> <li>Destruction of watercourses (pans/dams/streams).</li> </ul>	-		M	Yes	-	
			SOCIALECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT	Local unemployment rate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Job creation.</li> <li>Skills development.</li> </ul>		+	S	N/A	-
				Visual landscape	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Since there are no tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the construction activities will not have an impact on tourism in the area.</li> </ul>	-		M	Yes	-
				Traffic volumes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase in construction vehicles.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
				Health & Safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Air/dust pollution.</li> <li>Road safety.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
				Noise levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The generation of noise as a result of construction vehicles, and people working on the site.</li> </ul>	-		M	Yes	-
				Tourism industry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Since there are no tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the construction activities will not have an impact on tourism in the area.</li> </ul>	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-
Heritage resources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Removal or destruction of archaeological and/or paleontological sites.</li> <li>Removal or destruction of buildings, structures, places and equipment of cultural significance.</li> <li>Removal or destruction of graves, cemeteries and burial grounds.</li> </ul>	-			S	Yes	-			
<b>OPERATIONAL PHASE</b>										

<p><b>Listing Notice 1, GNR 327, Activity 20:</b> "Any activity including the operation of that activity which requires a prospecting right in terms of section 16 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including— (a) associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks, directly related to prospecting of a mineral resource; or [including activities for which an exemption has been issued in terms of section 106 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)] (b) the primary processing of a petroleum resource including winning, extraction, classifying, concentrating or water removal; –</p> <p><b>Listing Notice 2, GNR 325, Activity 19:</b> "The removal and disposal of minerals contemplated in terms of section 20 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including— (a) associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks, directly related to prospecting of a mineral resource or (b) [including activities for which an exemption has been issued in terms of section 106 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)] the primary processing of a mineral resource including winning, extraction, classifying, concentrating, crushing, screening or washing;</p> <p><b>NEM:WA 59 of 2008: Residue stockpiles or residue deposits, Category A: (15)</b> The establishment or reclamation of a residue stockpile or residue deposit resulting from activities which require a prospecting right or mining permit, in terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002).</p>	<p>The key components of the proposed project are described below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Supporting Infrastructure</b> - A control facility with basic services such as water and electricity will be constructed on the site and will have an approximate footprint 50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><b>Roads</b> – Access will be obtained from a gravel road off the R386 or R370.</li> <li><b>Fencing</b> - For health, safety and security reasons, the facility will be required to be fenced off from the surrounding farm.</li> </ul>	BIOPHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT	Fauna & Flora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fragmentation of habitats.</li> <li>Establishment and spread of declared weeds and alien invader plants (operations).</li> </ul>	-	-	L	Yes	-	
			Air quality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Air pollution due to the mining activity, crusher plant and transport of the gravel to the designated areas.</li> </ul>	-	-	S	Yes	-	
			Soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Soil degradation, including erosion.</li> <li>Disturbance of soils and existing land use (soil compaction).</li> <li>Loss of agricultural potential (low – medium significance relative to agricultural potential of the site).</li> </ul>	-	-	L	Yes	-	
			Geology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Collapsible soil.</li> <li>Seepage (shallow water table).</li> <li>Active soil (high soil heave).</li> <li>Erodible soil.</li> <li>The presence of undermined ground.</li> <li>Instability due to soluble rock.</li> <li>Steep slopes or areas of unstable natural slopes.</li> <li>Areas subject to seismic activity.</li> <li>Areas subject to flooding.</li> </ul>	-	-	L	Yes	-	
			Existing services infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Generation of waste that need to be accommodated at a licensed landfill site.</li> <li>Generation of sewage that need to be accommodated by the municipal sewerage system and the local sewage plant.</li> <li>Increased consumption of water. Approximately 68 000 L/hour</li> </ul>	-	-	L	Yes	-	
			Ground water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Leakage of hazardous materials. The machinery on site require oils and fuel to function. Leakage of these oils and fuels can contaminate water supplies.</li> </ul>	-	-	L	Yes	-	
			Surface water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase in storm water runoff. The development will potentially result in an increase in storm water run-off that needs to be managed to prevent soil erosion.</li> <li>Destruction of watercourses (pans/dams/streams).</li> <li>Leakage of hazardous materials. The machinery on site require oils and fuel to function. Leakage of these oils and fuels can contaminate water supplies.</li> </ul>	-	-	L	Yes	-	
			SOCIALECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT	Local unemployment rate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Job creation. Security guards will be required for 24 hours every day of the week.</li> <li>Skills development.</li> </ul>	+	-	L	Yes	-
				Visual landscape	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The proposed portions are used for livestock grazing and crop production which will still take place simultaneously with the prospecting activity, however this depends on the location of the activity.</li> </ul>	-	-	L	Yes	-
				Traffic volumes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase in vehicles collecting gravel for distribution.</li> </ul>	-	-	S	Yes	-
				Health & Safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Air/dust pollution.</li> <li>Road safety.</li> </ul>	-	-	S	Yes	-
				Noise levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The proposed development will result in noise pollution during the operational phase.</li> </ul>	-	-	L	Yes	-
				Tourism industry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Since there are no tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the decommissioning activities will not have an impact on tourism in the area.</li> </ul>	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-
Heritage resources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is not foreseen that the proposed activity will impact on heritage resources or vice versa.</li> </ul>	-	-	M	Yes	-				
<b>DECOMMISSIONING PHASE</b>										

-	<p><u>Mine closure</u> During the mine closure the Mine and its associated infrastructure will be dismantled.</p> <p><u>Rehabilitation of biophysical environment</u> The biophysical environment will be rehabilitated.</p>	BIOPHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT	Fauna & Flora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Re-vegetation of exposed soil surfaces to ensure no erosion in these areas.</li> </ul>		+	L	Yes	-
			Air quality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Air pollution due to the increase of traffic of construction vehicles.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			Soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Backfilling of all voids</li> <li>Placing of topsoil on backfill</li> </ul>		+	L	Yes	-
			Geology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is not foreseen that the decommissioning phase will impact on the geology of the site or vice versa.</li> </ul>	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-
			Existing services infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Generation of waste that need to be accommodated at the local landfill site.</li> <li>Generation of sewage that need to be accommodated by the municipal sewerage system and the local sewage plant.</li> <li>Increase in construction vehicles.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			Ground water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pollution due to construction vehicles.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			Surface water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase in storm water run-off.</li> <li>Pollution of water sources due to soil erosion.</li> <li>Destruction of watercourses (pans/dams/streams).</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
		SOCIALECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT	Local unemployment rate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Loss of employment.</li> </ul>	-		L	Yes	-
			Visual landscape	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Potential visual impact on visual receptors in close proximity to proposed facility.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			Traffic volumes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase in construction vehicles.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			Health & Safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Air/dust pollution.</li> <li>Road safety.</li> <li>Increased crime levels. The presence of mine workers on the site may increase security risks associated with an increase in crime levels as a result of influx of people in the rural area.</li> </ul>	-		L	Yes	-
			Noise levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The generation of noise as a result of construction vehicles, the use of machinery and people working on the site.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			Tourism industry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Since there are no tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the decommissioning activities will not have an impact on tourism in the area.</li> </ul>	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-
Heritage resources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is not foreseen that the decommissioning phase will impact on any heritage resources.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-			

(N/A) No impact (+) Positive Impact (-) Negative Impact (S) Short Term (M) Medium Term (L) Long Term

## J. AN ASSESSMENT OF EACH IDENTIFIED POTENTIALLY SIGNIFICANT IMPACT AND RISK, INCLUDING—

- (i) cumulative impacts;
- (ii) the nature, significance and consequences of the impact and risk;
- (iii) the extent and duration of the impact and risk;
- (iv) the probability of the impact and risk occurring;
- (v) the degree to which the impact and risk can be reversed;
- (vi) the degree to which the impact and risk may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and
- (vii) the degree to which the impact and risk can be mitigated;

### Significance of potential impacts

The following sections present the outcome of the significance rating exercise. The results suggest that almost none of the key issues identified as part of the EIR process had a negative high environmental significance. Instead the overall score indicate a low environmental significance score.

## INITIAL CLEARANCE AND SITE PREPARATION PHASE

**Direct impacts:** During this phase minor negative impacts are foreseen over the short term. The latter refers to a period of weeks. The site preparation may result in the loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural fauna and flora, loss or fragmentation of habitats, soil erosion, hydrology, and temporary noise disturbance, generation of waste, visual intrusions, increase in heavy vehicle traffic, and risk to safety, livestock and farm infrastructure, and increased risk of veld fires. The abovementioned impacts are discussed in more detail below:

### Loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural fauna and flora:

According to the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment specialist study:

- According to the National Threatened Ecosystem database (2011), the study site overlaps with the Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation Ecosystem, a Vulnerable classed ecosystem.
- According to the Northern Cape Biodiversity Sector Plan (2016), most of the study site is classified as either Critical Biodiversity Area 1 and 2, which are terrestrial and aquatic areas of the landscape that need to be maintained in a natural or near-natural state in order to ensure the continued existence and functioning of species and ecosystems and the delivery of ecosystem services.
- Shepard's Tree (*Boscia albitrunca*), a Protected Tree species of South Africa, was recorded on site, along with the protected Cannon Aloe (*Aloe claviflora*) and Bushman's Hat (*Hoodia gordonii*).

Loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural fauna and flora	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Definite (4)	Possible (3)
Duration	Long term (3)	Medium (2)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Irreversible (4)	Barely reversible (3)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resource (3)	Marginal loss of resource (2)
Cumulative impact	High cumulative impacts (4),	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative high impact (57)</b>	<b>Negative Medium (32)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	<p>If the development is approved, contractors must ensure that no mammalian species are disturbed, trapped, hunted or killed. If the development is approved, every effort should be made to confine the footprint to the blocks allocated for the development and have the least possible edge effects on the surrounding area. The EMPr also provides numerous mitigation measures – refer to section (f) of the EMPr.</p> <p>The potential impacts associated with damage to and loss of farmland should be effectively mitigated. The aspects that should be covered include:</p>	

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The site should be fenced off prior to commencement of construction activities;</li> <li>• The footprint associated with the construction related activities (access roads, construction platforms, workshop etc.) should be confined to the fenced off area and minimised where possible;</li> <li>• An Environmental Control Officer (ECO) should be appointed to monitor the establishment phase of the construction phase;</li> <li>• All areas disturbed by construction related activities, such as access roads on the site, construction platforms, workshop area etc., should be rehabilitated at the end of the construction phase;</li> <li>• The implementation of a rehabilitation programme should be included in the terms of reference for the contractor/s appointed. Specifications for the rehabilitation are provided throughout the EMPr – section (f) of the EMPr.</li> <li>• The implementation of the Rehabilitation Programme should be monitored by the ECO.</li> </ul>
--	--

- Loss or fragmentation of habitats – Large vegetation clearance

Loss or fragmentation of habitats	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Definite (4)	Possible (3)
Duration	Long term (3)	Medium (2)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Irreversible (4)	Barely reversible (3)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resource (3)	Marginal loss of resource (2)
Cumulative impact	High cumulative impacts (4),	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative high impact (57)</b>	<b>Negative Medium (32)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	Exotic and invasive plant species should not be allowed to establish, if the development is approved. Where exotic and invasive plant species are found at the site continuous eradication should take place. If the development is approved, every effort should be made to confine the footprint to the blocks allocated for development – section (f) of the EMPr also provides numerous mitigation measures related to fauna and flora.	

- Loss of topsoil – Topsoil may be lost due to poor topsoil management (burial, erosion, etc.) during construction related soil profile disturbance (levelling, excavations, disposal of spoils from excavations etc.) The effect will be the loss of soil fertility on disturbed areas after rehabilitation.

Loss of topsoil	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Geographical extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Definite (4)	Possible (2)
Duration	Long term (3)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Very High (4)	High (3)
Reversibility	Barely reversible (3)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant (3)	Marginal (2)
Cumulative impact	High cumulative impact (4).	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative High (72)</b>	<b>Negative medium (39)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	The following mitigation or management measures are provided: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If an activity will mechanically disturb below surface in any way, then any available topsoil should first be stripped from the entire surface and stockpiled for re-spreading during rehabilitation.</li> </ul>	



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Topsoil stockpiles must be conserved against losses through erosion by establishing vegetation cover on them.</li> <li>• Dispose of all subsurface spoils from excavations where they will not impact on undisturbed land.</li> <li>• During rehabilitation, the stockpiled topsoil must be evenly spread over the entire disturbed surface.</li> <li>• Erosion must be controlled where necessary on top soiled areas.</li> </ul> <p>Establish an effective record keeping system for each area where soil is disturbed for constructional purposes. These records should be included in environmental performance reports, and should include all the records below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Record the GPS coordinates of each area.</li> <li>• Record the date of topsoil stripping.</li> <li>• Record the GPS coordinates of where the topsoil is stockpiled.</li> <li>• Record the date of cessation of constructional (or operational) activities at the particular site.</li> <li>• Photograph the area on cessation of constructional activities.</li> <li>• Record date and depth of re-spreading of topsoil.</li> <li>• Photograph the area on completion of rehabilitation and on an annual basis thereafter to show vegetation establishment and evaluate progress of restoration over time.</li> </ul> <p>Section (f) of the EMPr also provide mitigation measures related to topsoil management.</p>
--	---

- Soil erosion – Soil erosion due to alteration of the land surface run-off characteristics. Alteration of run-off characteristics may be caused by construction related land surface disturbance, vegetation removal and the establishment of roads. Erosion will cause loss and deterioration of soil resources. The erosion risk is low due to the low slope gradients and low to moderate erodibility of the soils.

According to the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment Report (Appendix 12) most of the proposed prospecting activities are set to take place within and/or near the Orange River (Figure 24). These activities will result in a disturbance of the river systems and vegetation habitats during the construction and operation phases. During rainfall events, the Orange River will receive an influx of sediment and other nutrients and possible toxic pollutants. See Table 32 below for a list of expected impacts.

Soil erosion	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Geographical extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Definite (4)	Possible (2)
Duration	Long term (3)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Barely reversible (3)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant (3)	Marginal (2)
Cumulative impact	High cumulative impact (4).	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative High (54)</b>	<b>Negative Low (26)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	The following mitigation or management measures are provided: Implement an effective system of run-off control, where it is required, that collects and safely disseminates run-off water from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion.	



	Include periodical site inspection in environmental performance reporting that inspects the effectiveness of the run-off control system and specifically records the occurrence any erosion on site or downstream – refer to section (f) of the EMPr.
--	---

- Temporary noise disturbance - Preparation activities will result in the generation of noise over a period of months. Sources of noise are likely to include vehicles, the use of machinery such as back actors and people working on the site. The noise impact is unlikely to be significant; but activities should be limited to normal working days and hours (6:00 – 18:00).

Temporary noise disturbance	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Probable (3)	Possible (2)
Duration	Short term (1)	Short term (1)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	The impact would result in negligible to no cumulative effects (1).	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative low (18)</b>	<b>Negative low (8)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, management actions related to noise pollution are included in section (f) of the EMPr.	

- Generation of waste - general waste, construction waste, sewage and grey water - The workers on site are likely to generate general waste such as food wastes, packaging, bottles, etc. Construction waste is likely to consist of packaging, scrap metals, waste cement, etc (if any). The applicant will need to ensure that general and construction waste is appropriately disposed of i.e. taken to the nearest licensed landfill. Sufficient ablution facilities will have to be provided, in the form of portable/VIP toilets. No pit latrines, French drain systems or soak away systems shall be allowed.

Generation of waste	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local/district (2)	Local/district (2)
Probability	Definite (4)	Definite (4)
Duration	Short term (1)	Short term (1)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2)	No loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2) - An additional demand for landfill space could result in low significant cumulative impacts if services become unstable or unavailable, which in turn would negatively impact on the local community.	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative low (26)</b>	<b>Negative low (12)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, it is therefore important that all management actions and mitigation measures included in section (f) of the EMPr are implemented.	

- Impacts on heritage objects – Special attention was given to the identification of possible cultural / heritage and palaeontological resources on site. A Phase 1 Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment was conducted by Dr. J. A. van Schalkwyk and a Palaeontological Desktop Assessment compiled by E. Butler from Banzai Environmental (Pty) Ltd. Please see their findings below:

### Phase 1 Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment

#### Identified sites

Based on the survey and what was identified, within the framework of the proposed prospecting activities, three areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These sites are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.

Significant gravel terraces containing banded iron stone (Jaspelite) occur in or near the study area. Due to its general

availability, this seems to have been the preferred material in this region, especially for use during the Middle Stone Age. However, lithics made from quartzite are also found. At Wouterspan, the gravel terrace occurs approximately 20-40m above the Orange River and appear to have been deposited in a braided river environment. The further away one move from the river, off from the river terraces, the less such material is found, with a concurrent diminishing presence of Stone Age lithics. Based on the survey and what was identified, within the framework of the proposed prospecting activities, three areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These site are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.

**Site 1:** Some poorly formed stone tools, classified as side- and end scrapers, dating to the Middle Stone Age was identified on the lower terrace of the Orange River. The material used is banded iron stone. Significant of this area is the presence of a single Early Stone Age hand-axe, the only one found in all of the various sections of the study area. Coordinates: S 29,34038; E 23,18431

**Site 2:** A large area, high on a ridge, directly above the Orange River. The lithics date to the Middle Stone Age and scrapers, blades, flakes and cores were identified. Of significance here it the fact that the material used is not only banded ironstone, but quartzite as well. Coordinates: S 29,37419; E 23,09825

**Site 3:** An area on the lower terrace where a high density of MSA lithics occur. The material used is mostly banded iron stone, although a few pieces made from quartzite were also recorded. Tools, flakes and cores were identified. Coordinates: S 29,39984; E 23,11374

Please see Figure 18 in the report and **Appendix 12** for the colour map in the HIA

Impact assessment and proposed mitigation measures

Impact analysis of cultural heritage resources under threat of the proposed prospecting activities is based on the present understanding of the project:

Site No.	Site type	NHRA category	Field rating	Impact rating: Before/After mitigation
7.1.1	Archaeological material	Section 35	Generally protected: Medium significance – Grade IV-B	Medium (52)
				Low (18)

Mitigation measures:

- The three identified areas are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities and should be avoided
  - Avoidance/Preserve: This is viewed to be the primary form of mitigation and the site should be retained in situ and a buffer zone should be created around it, either temporary (by means of danger tape) or permanently (wire fence or built wall).

Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should be authorised:

- From a heritage point of view, it is recommended that the proposed prospecting activities be allowed to continue on acceptance of the proposed mitigation measures and the conditions proposed below.

**Palaeontological Desktop Assessment**

Summary of Impacts

The expected duration of the impact is assessed as potentially permanent to long term. In the absence of mitigation procedures (should fossil material be present within the affected area) the damage or destruction of any palaeontological materials will be permanent. Impacts on palaeontological heritage during the construction phase could potentially occur but are regarded as having a low probability. The significance of the impact occurring will be low.

Findings and Recommendations

The development is underlain by the Miocene to Recent Cenozoic Kalahari Group which are underlain by sediments of the Dwyka Group. The Palaeontological Sensitivity of the Kalahari Group is low and that of the Dwyka Group is low (Almond and Pether 2008, SAHRIS website). It is therefore considered that the proposed mining development is deemed appropriate and feasible and will not lead to detrimental impacts on the palaeontological resources of the area. Thus, the construction and operation of the mine may be authorised as the development footprint is not considered sensitive in terms of palaeontological resources.

*If fossil remains are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the ECO/site manager in charge of these developments must be informed immediately. These discoveries ought to be secured (preferably in situ) and the ECO/site manager ought to alert SAHRA so that appropriate mitigation (documented and collection) can be undertaken by a professional palaeontologist.*

*The specialist would need a collection permit from SAHRA. Fossil material must be curated in an approved collection (museum or university) and all fieldwork and reports should meet the minimum standards for palaeontological impact studies developed by SAHRA.*

<b>Impacts on heritage objects</b>	<b>Pre-mitigation impact rating</b>	<b>Post mitigation impact rating</b>
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Permanent (4)	Permanent (4)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Irreversible (4)	Irreversible (4)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resource (3)	Marginal loss of resource (2)
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impact (3). Should these impacts occur, there may be a cumulative impact on the preservation of heritage objects in the area.	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative high (51)</b>	<b>Negative medium (32)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	<p>If archaeological sites or graves are exposed during construction work, it should immediately be reported to a heritage practitioner so that an investigation and evaluation of the finds can be made. Also refer to section (f) of the EMPr.</p> <p>The following shall apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Known sites should be clearly marked in order that they can be avoided during construction activities.</li> <li>• The contractors and workers should be notified that archaeological sites might be exposed during the construction activities.</li> <li>• Should any heritage artefacts be exposed during excavation, work on the area where the artefacts were discovered, shall cease immediately and the Environmental Control Officer shall be notified as soon as possible;</li> <li>• All discoveries shall be reported immediately to a heritage practitioner so that an investigation and evaluation of the finds can be made. Acting upon advice from these specialists, the Environmental</li> <li>• Control Officer will advise the necessary actions to be taken;</li> <li>• Under no circumstances shall any artefacts be removed, destroyed or interfered with by anyone on the site; and</li> <li>• Contractors and workers shall be advised of the penalties associated with the unlawful removal of cultural, historical, archaeological or palaeontological artefacts, as set out in the National Heritage Resources Act (Act No. 25 of 1999), Section 51. (1).</li> </ul> <p>In order to achieve this, the following should be in place:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A person or entity, e.g. the Environmental Control Officer, should be tasked to take responsibility for the heritage sites and should be held accountable for any damage.</li> <li>• Known sites should be located and isolated, e.g. by fencing them off. All construction workers should be informed that these are no-go areas, unless accompanied by the individual</li> </ul>	

	<p>or persons representing the Environmental Control Officer as identified above.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In areas where the vegetation is threatening the heritage sites, e.g. growing trees pushing walls over, it should be removed, but only after permission for the methods proposed has been granted by SAHRA. A heritage official should be part of the team executing these measures.</li> </ul>
--	--

**Indirect impacts:** The nuisance aspects generally associated with the installation of infrastructure or ground preparation will also be applicable to this development, which relates primarily to the increase in vehicle traffic associated with prospecting practices, the influx of job seekers to the area, risk to safety, livestock and farm infrastructure, and increased risk of veld fires.

- Increase in vehicle traffic** – The movement of heavy vehicles during the clearance of vegetation and topsoil has the potential to damage local farm roads and create dust and safety impacts for other road users in the area. Access will be obtained from existing gravel roads. While the volume of traffic along this road is low, the movement of heavy vehicles along this road is likely to damage the road surface and impact on other road users. The contractor should be required to ensure that damage to the road is repaired periodically. The movement of additional heavy vehicle traffic is will add significantly to the current traffic load on the road. The impact on the roads is therefore likely to be moderate.

Increase in vehicle traffic	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)
Duration	Short term (1)	Short term (1)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2)	No loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2). If damage to roads is not repaired, then this will affect the farming activities in the area and result in higher maintenance costs for vehicles of local farmers and other road users. The costs will be borne by road users who were no responsible for the damage.	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative low impacts (20)</b>	<b>Negative low (8)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	<p>The potential impacts associated with heavy vehicles can be effectively mitigated. The mitigation measures include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The contractor must ensure that damage caused by construction on the roads are repaired. The costs associated with the repair must be borne by the contractor;</li> <li>Dust suppression measures must be implemented for heavy vehicles such as wetting of gravel roads on a regular basis and ensuring that vehicles used to transport sand and building materials are fitted with tarpaulins or covers;</li> <li>All vehicles must be road-worthy and drivers must be qualified and made aware of the potential road safety issues and need for strict speed limits.</li> </ul> <p>Also refer section (f) of the EMPr. For mitigation measures related to traffic.</p>	

- Risk to safety, livestock and farm infrastructure** - The presence on and movement of workers on and off the site poses a potential safety threat to local farmer's and farm workers in the vicinity of the site threat. In addition, farm infrastructure, such as fences and gates, may be damaged and stock losses may also result from gates being left open and/or fences being damaged or stock theft linked either directly or indirectly to the presence of farm workers on the site.

Risk to safety, livestock and farm infrastructure	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resource (3)	Marginal resource (2)
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative effects (2), provided losses are compensated for.	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative medium (39)</b>	<b>Negative low (22)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	<p>Key mitigation measures include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Bondeo 140 CC</b> should enter into an agreement with the local farmers in the area whereby damages to farm property etc. during the construction phase will be compensated for. The agreement should be signed before the construction phase commences;</li> <li>• The construction area should be fenced off prior to the commencement of the construction phase. The movement of construction workers on the site should be confined to the fenced off area;</li> <li>• Contractors appointed by <b>Bondeo 140 CC</b> should provide daily transport for low and semi-skilled workers to and from the site. This would reduce the potential risk of trespassing on the remainder of the farm and adjacent properties;</li> <li>• <b>Bondeo 140 CC</b> should hold contractors liable for compensating farmers in full for any stock losses and/or damage to farm infrastructure that can be linked to construction workers. This should be contained in the Code of Conduct to be signed between the proponent, the contractors and neighbouring landowners. The agreement should also cover losses and costs associated with fires caused by construction workers or construction related activities (see below);</li> <li>• The Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) should outline procedures for managing and storing waste on site, specifically plastic waste that poses a threat to livestock if ingested;</li> <li>• Contractors appointed <b>Bondeo 140 CC</b> must ensure that all workers are informed at the outset of the construction phase of the conditions contained on the Code of Conduct, specifically consequences of stock theft and trespassing on adjacent farms.</li> <li>• Contractors appointed by <b>Bondeo 140 CC</b> must ensure that construction workers who are found guilty of trespassing, stealing livestock and/or damaging farm infrastructure are dismissed and charged. This should be contained in the Code of Conduct. All dismissals must be in accordance with South African labour legislation;</li> <li>• The housing of construction workers on the site should be strictly limited to security personnel (if any).</li> </ul>	

- Increased risk of veld fires - The presence of construction workers and construction-related activities on the site poses an increased risk of grass fires that could in turn pose a threat to livestock, crops, wildlife and farmsteads in the area. In the process, farm infrastructure may also be damaged or destroyed and human lives threatened. The potential risk of grass fires was heightened by the windy conditions in the area, especially during the dry, windy winter months from May to October. In terms of potential mitigation measures, a fire-break should be constructed around the perimeter of the site prior to the commencement of the construction phase. In addition, fire-fighting equipment should be provided on site during the construction phase.

Increased risk of veld fires	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Region (3)	Local (2)
Probability	Probable (3)	Possible (2)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Short term (1)
Magnitude	Very High (4)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resource (3)	No loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	Negligible cumulative effects (1), provided losses are compensated for.	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative high (52)</b>	<b>Negative low (8)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	<p>The mitigation measures include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A fire-break should be constructed around the perimeter of the site prior to the commencement of the construction phase;</li> <li>• Contractor should ensure that open fires on the site for cooking or heating are not allowed except in designated areas;</li> <li>• Contractor to ensure that construction related activities that pose a potential fire risk, such as welding, are properly managed and are confined to areas where the risk of fires has been reduced. Measures to reduce the risk of fires include avoiding working in high wind conditions when the risk of fires is greater. In this regard special care should be taken during the high risk dry, windy winter months;</li> <li>• Contractor to provide adequate firefighting equipment on-site, including a fire fighting vehicle;</li> <li>• Contractor to provide fire-fighting training to selected construction staff;</li> <li>• No construction staff, with the exception of security staff, to be accommodated on site over night;</li> <li>• As per the conditions of the Code of Conduct, in the advent of a fire being caused by construction workers and or construction activities, the appointed contractors must compensate farmers for any damage caused to their farms. The contractor should also compensate the firefighting costs borne by farmers and local authorities.</li> </ul>	

**OPERATIONAL PHASE**

**Direct impacts:** During the operational phase the study area will serve as an prospecting area and the impacts are generally associated with soil erosion, change in land use, impacts associated with the, increase in storm water runoff, increased consumption of water, visual intrusion, the generation of general waste, leakage of hazardous materials, and the change in the sense of place. The operational phase will also have a direct positive impact through the provision of permanent employment opportunities and facilitating a positive economic growth. The abovementioned impacts are discussed in more detail below:

- Soil erosion – The largest risk factor for soil erosion will be during the operational phase when the prospecting activity ensues and soil is left bare until rehabilitation is initiated. Erosion will be localised within the site. This will ultimately lead to the irretrievable commitment of this resource. The measurable effect of reducing erosion by utilizing mitigation measures may reduce possible erosion significantly.

Soil erosion	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Definite (4)	Possible (2)
Duration	Long term (3)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Very High (4)	High (3)
Reversibility	Barely reversible (3)	Partly reversible (2)

Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant (3)	Marginal (2)
Cumulative impact	High cumulative impact (4).	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative High (72)</b>	<b>Negative medium (39)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, to avoid soil erosion it will be a good practice to not remove all the vegetation at once but to only clear the area as it becomes necessary and to implement concurrent rehabilitation.  Also refer to section (f) of the EMPr.	

- Change in land-use – The use of the area for the operation of the prospecting activity will result in the area not being used for livestock grazing or cultivation anymore dependent on where the prospecting activities will occur.

According to the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment Report (Appendix 12): *the dominant land use in the area is small-scale farming, game farming, crop farming (pivot irrigation) and water abstraction from the Orange River. Some housing and several access roads are present on the study site, including fenced off areas.*

Change in land use	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Long term (3)	Short term (2)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Barely reversible (3)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resource (3)	Marginal loss of resource (2)
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impacts (3).	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative medium (32)</b>	<b>Negative low (26)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	The proponent should establish a Rehabilitation Fund to be used to rehabilitate the area once the proposed facility has been decommissioned. The fund should be funded by revenue generated during the operational phase of the project. The motivation for the establishment of a Rehabilitation Fund is based on the experience in the mining sector where many mines on closure have not set aside sufficient funds for closure and decommissioning.  Also refer to section (f) of the EMPr.	

- Generation of alternative land use income – Income generated through the Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) mine will provide the farming enterprise with increased cash flow and rural livelihood, and thereby improve the financial sustainability of farming on site.

Generation of alternative land use income	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Positive	Positive
Geographical extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Definite (4)	Definite (4)
Duration	Long term (3)	Long term (3)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	High (3)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resources (1)	No loss of resources (1)
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impact (3).	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Positive Low (24)</b>	<b>Positive medium (39)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	No mitigation required.	

- Increase in storm water runoff – The development will potentially result in an increase in storm water run-off that needs to be managed to prevent soil erosion, especially where vegetation will be cleared. Not all the vegetation should be removed at once. Only the specific trench being excavated at the specific time should be cleared



<b>Increase in storm water runoff</b>	<b>Pre-mitigation impact rating</b>	<b>Post mitigation impact rating</b>
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Probable (3)	Unlikely (1)
Duration	Long term (3)	Long term (3)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2)	Marginal loss of resource (2)
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impact (3) - Should these impacts occur, there will be a cumulative impacts on the wider area.	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative medium (30)</b>	<b>Negative low (13)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	<p>Yes. It is therefore important that all management actions and mitigation measures included in section (f) of the EMPr. are implemented to ensure that these impacts do not occur</p> <p>The cut-off trenches and silt fences will be installed where necessary as to control runoff storm water by attenuating it and control the movement of sediment on the premises.</p> <p>These structures will be monitored on a regular basis. It is suggested that it be monitored on a weekly basis during the rainy season, and after possible rain events during the dry season.</p> <p>If these practices is found to be insufficient for the control of storm water and sedimentation, other alternatives should immediately be investigated and implemented.</p>	

Increased consumption of water - Since 4 x 16 feet washing pans will be used, the amount of water for the pans will be 68000 L/hour from which 30% is re-used.

<b>Increased consumption of water</b>	<b>Pre-mitigation impact rating</b>	<b>Post mitigation impact rating</b>
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Region (3)	Region (3)
Probability	Definite (4)	Definite (4)
Duration	Long term (3)	Long term (3)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Irreversible (4)	Irreversible (4)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resources (3)	Marginal loss of resources (2)
Cumulative impact	High cumulative impacts (4) - An additional demand on water sources could result in a significant cumulative impact with regards to the availability of water.	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative high impact (63)</b>	<b>Negative medium (40)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, management actions and mitigation measures related to the use of water are included in section (f) of the EMPr.	

- Generation of waste – Approximately 15 Workers will be present on site from 6:00 – 18:00, Monday to Saturday. Sources of general waste will be waste food, packaging, paper, etc. General waste will be stored on the site and removed on a weekly basis by a contractor.

<b>Generation of waste</b>	<b>Pre-mitigation impact rating</b>	<b>Post mitigation impact rating</b>
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Definite (4)	Definite (4)
Duration	Long term (3)	Long term (3)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)

Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impact (3) - An additional demand for landfill space could result in significant cumulative impacts with regards to the availability of landfill space.	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative medium (30)</b>	<b>Negative low (15)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, management actions related to waste management are included in section (f) of the EMPr.	

- Leakage of hazardous materials - The proposed prospecting activity will make use of machinery that use fuel and oil. Leakage of these oils and fuel can contaminate water supplies and must be prevented by constructing oil and diesel permeable bunds to ensure that any spills are suitably attenuated and not released into the environment.

Leakage of hazardous materials	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)
Duration	Long term (3)	Long term (3)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2)	Marginal loss of resource (2)
Cumulative impact	The impact would result in negligible to no cumulative effects (1)	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative medium (36)</b>	<b>Negative low (22)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes. It is therefore important that all management actions and mitigation measures included in the section (f) of EMPr are implemented to ensure that these impacts do not occur.	

- Noise disturbance - Prospecting activities will result in the generation of noise over a period of 3-5 years. Sources of noise are likely to include vehicles, the use of machinery such as backactors, rotary pans and people working on the site. The noise impact is likely to be significant as the closest

Temporary noise disturbance	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Definite (4)	Probable (3)
Duration	Short term (1)	Short term (1)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2)	Marginal loss of resource (2)
Cumulative impact	The impact would result in medium cumulative effects (3).	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative low (26)</b>	<b>Negative low (24)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, management actions related to noise pollution are included in section (f) of the EMPr.	

**Indirect impacts:** The operational phase will have an indirect negative impact through the change in the sense of place and an indirect positive impact through the provision of additional electrical infrastructure.

- Potential impact on tourism – The impact of the proposed prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) on the areas sense of place with mitigation is likely to be medium. In addition, the site may be visible from the gravel road.

Potential impacts on tourism	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)

Magnitude	Medium (2)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	N/A	N/A
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impacts (3)	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative low (20)</b>	<b>Negative low (20)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	No mitigation required	

**DECOMMISSIONING PHASE (MINE CLOSURE AND REHABILITATION)**

**Direct impacts:** Typically, the major social impacts associated with the decommissioning phase are linked to the loss of jobs and associated income. This has implications for the households who are directly affected, the communities within which they live. If infrastructures are removed after a 3/5 year period, the site will be returned to its natural state. Therefore the physical environment will benefit from the closure of the prospecting area.

- Rehabilitation of the physical environment – The physical environment will benefit from the closure of the prospecting area since the site will be restored to its natural state.

Rehabilitation of the physical environment	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Positive	Positive
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Possible (2)	Probable (3)
Duration	Long term (3)	Long term (3)
Magnitude	Low (1)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	N/A	N/A
Irreplaceable loss of resources	N/A	N/A
Cumulative impact	The impact would result in negligible to no cumulative effects (1)	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Positive low (8)</b>	<b>Positive low (18)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	No mitigation measures required.	

- Loss of employment - Given the relatively large number of people employed during the operational phase, the decommissioning of the facility has the potential to have a negative social impact on the local community.

Loss of employment	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Short term (1)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	The impact would result in negligible to no cumulative effects (1)	
<b>Significance</b>	<b>Negative medium (30)</b>	<b>Negative low (18)</b>
Can impacts be mitigated?	The following mitigation measures are recommended: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All structures and infrastructure associated with the proposed facility should be dismantled and transported off-site on decommissioning;</li> <li>• <b>Bondeo 140 CC</b> should establish an Environmental Rehabilitation Trust Fund to cover the costs of decommissioning and rehabilitation of disturbed areas.</li> </ul>	

**Indirect impacts:** No indirect impacts are anticipated from the decommissioning phase of the proposed development.

**K. SUMMARY OF THE FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS OF ANY SPECIALIST REPORT**

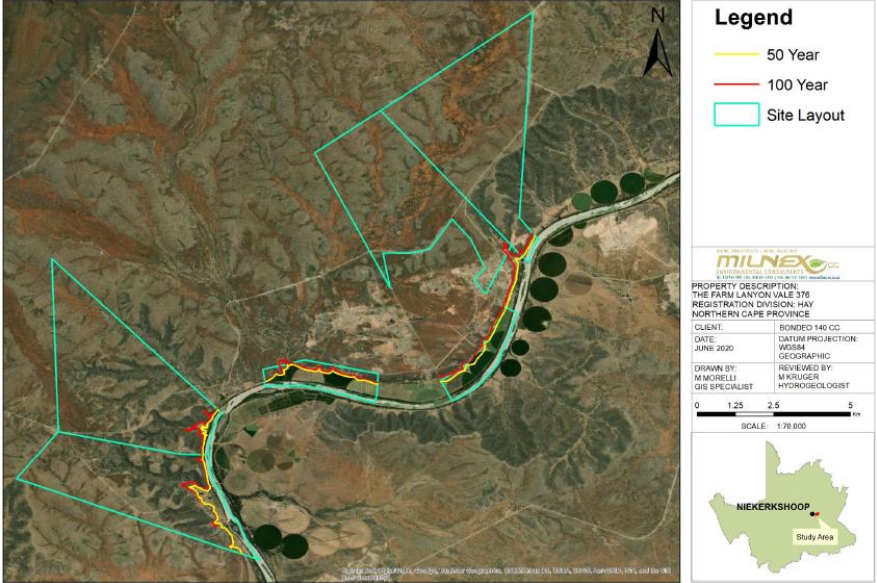
(where applicable, a summary of the findings and recommendations of any specialist report complying with Appendix 6 to these Regulations and an indication as to how these findings and recommendations have been included in the final assessment report):-

LIST OF STUDIES UNDERTAKEN	RECOMMENDATIONS OF SPECIALIST REPORTS	SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS THAT HAVE BEEN INCLUDED IN THE EIA REPORT (Mark with an X where applicable)	REFERENCE TO APPLICABLE SECTION OF REPORT WHERE SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS HAVE BEEN INCLUDED.
<p><b>Phase 1 Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment conducted by Dr J. A. van Schalkwyk</b></p>	<p><b>IDENTIFIED SITES</b>  <i>Based on the survey and what was identified, within the framework of the proposed prospecting activities, three areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These site are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.</i></p> <p><i>Significant gravel terraces containing banded iron stone (Jaspelite) occur in or near the study area. Due to its general availability, this seems to have been the preferred material in this region, especially for use during the Middle Stone Age. However, lithics made from quartzite are also found. At Wouterspan, the gravel terrace occurs approximately 20-40m above the Orange River and appear to have been deposited in a braided river environment. The further away one move from the river, off from the river terraces, the less such material is found, with a concurrent diminishing presence of Stone Age lithics. Based on the survey and what was identified, within the framework of the proposed prospecting activities, three areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These site are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.</i></p> <p><b>Site 1:</b> <i>Some poorly formed stone tools, classified as side- and end scrapers, dating to the Middle Stone Age was identified on the lower terrace of the Orange River. The material used is banded iron stone. Significant of this area is the presence of a single Early Stone Age hand-axe, the only one found in all of the various sections of the study area. <b>Coordinates:</b> S 29,34038; E 23,18431</i></p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>X</b></p>	<p><b>Pages:</b> 51, 52, 61, 71, 72, 88, 89, 95, 96, 124, 125, 148</p>

	<p><b>Site 2:</b> A large area, high on a ridge, directly above the Orange River. The lithics date to the Middle Stone Age and scrapers, blades, flakes and cores were identified. Of significance here it the fact that the material used is not only banded ironstone, but quartzite as well. <b>Coordinates:</b> S 29,37419; E 23,09825</p> <p><b>Site 3:</b> An area on the lower terrace where a high density of MSA lithics occur. The material used is mostly banded iron stone, although a few pieces made from quartzite were also recorded. Tools, flakes and cores were identified. <b>Coordinates:</b> S 29,39984; E 23,11374</p> <p><u>Impact assessment and proposed mitigation measures</u> Impact analysis of cultural heritage resources under threat of the proposed prospecting activities is based on the present understanding of the project:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Site No.</th> <th>Site type</th> <th>NHRA category</th> <th>Field rating</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>7.1.1</td> <td>Archaeological material</td> <td>Section 35</td> <td>Generally protected: Medium significance – Grade IV-B</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>MITIGATION MEASURES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The three identified areas are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities and should be avoided             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Avoidance/Preserve: This is viewed to be the primary form of mitigation and the site should be retained in situ and a buffer zone should be created around it, either temporary (by means of danger tape) or permanently (wire fence or built wall).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>With the coordinates presented above as central point, the following areas has to be set out and avoided.</p> <p><b>Site 1</b> – 3,82ha <b>Site 2</b> – 3,63ha <b>Site 2</b> – 9,26ha</p> <p><b>REASONED OPINION AS TO WHETHER THE PROPOSED ACTIVITY SHOULD BE AUTHORISED:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From a heritage point of view, it is recommended that the proposed prospecting activities be allowed to continue on acceptance of the proposed mitigation measures and the conditions proposed below.</li> </ul>	Site No.	Site type	NHRA category	Field rating	7.1.1	Archaeological material	Section 35	Generally protected: Medium significance – Grade IV-B		
Site No.	Site type	NHRA category	Field rating								
7.1.1	Archaeological material	Section 35	Generally protected: Medium significance – Grade IV-B								
<p>Palaeontological Desktop Assessment compiled by Banzai</p>	<p><b>SUMMARY OF IMPACTS</b></p>	<p><b>X</b></p>	<p><b>Pages:</b> 52, 53, 61, 63, 72, 73, 88, 89, 96, 97</p>								

<p><b>Environmental (Pty) Ltd, Elize Butler</b></p>	<p>The expected duration of the impact is assessed as potentially permanent to long term. In the absence of mitigation procedures (should fossil material be present within the affected area) the damage or destruction of any palaeontological materials will be permanent. Impacts on palaeontological heritage during the construction phase could potentially occur but are regarded as having a low probability. The significance of the impact occurring will be low.</p> <p><b>FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b></p> <p>The development is underlain by the Miocene to Recent Cenozoic Kalahari Group which are underlain by sediments of the Dwyka Group. The Palaeontological Sensitivity of the Kalahari Group is low and that of the Dwyka Group is low (Almond and Pether 2008, SAHRIS website). It is therefore considered that the proposed mining development is deemed appropriate and feasible and will not lead to detrimental impacts on the palaeontological resources of the area. Thus, the construction and operation of the mine may be authorised as the development footprint is not considered sensitive in terms of palaeontological resources.</p> <p>If fossil remains are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the ECO/site manager in charge of these developments must be informed immediately. These discoveries ought to be secured (preferably <i>in situ</i>) and the ECO/site manager ought to alert SAHRA so that appropriate mitigation (documented and collection) can be undertaken by a professional palaeontologist.</p> <p>The specialist would need a collection permit from SAHRA. Fossil material must be curated in an approved collection (museum or university) and all fieldwork and reports should meet the minimum standards for palaeontological impact studies developed by SAHRA.</p>		
---	--	--	--



<p><b>Floodline Assessment Report compiled by Marco Morelli from Milnex CC</b></p>	<p>Summary of the delineated 1:50 year and 1: 100-year floodlines are showcased in the Figure below.</p>  <p>Figure 14: Return Flood Peaks</p> <p>As seen in the figure above, part of the 1:50 and 1:100 flood peaks extend across the farm boundaries adjacent to the river.</p> <p><b>Recommendation</b></p> <p>It is recommended that the placement of infrastructure should adhere to the GN704 of the South African National Water Act (36 of 1998) and not be located within the 1:100- year Return Period flood line. This is essential for the safety of human life as well as for the protection of infrastructure from flood inundation and destruction.</p> <p>If it is planned to mine within in the flood peak areas, it is recommended that the client apply for 21(c) &amp; (i) water-uses as part of the Water Use License Application (WULA).</p>	<p>X</p>	<p><b>Pages:</b> 49, 50, 131, 154</p>
<p><b>Baseline Hydrogeological Assessment compiled by Marietjie Kruger from Milnex CC</b></p>	<p>Twenty-two (22) boreholes (LV-BH1 – BH22) were identified during field investigation conducted between the 26th and 27th May 2020. Groundwater was mainly used for stock watering and domestic use. Irrigation water is mainly sourced from the Orange River.</p>	<p>X</p>	<p><b>Pages:</b> 50, 51, 129, 130, 153</p>

	<p>Groundwater samples were collected from LV-BH9, LV-BH12, LV BH13 and LV-BH19. Based on elevated and non-compliant chloride, sulphate and nitrate groundwater abstracted from LVBH9, LV-BH13 and LV-BH19 is not suitable for human consumption without treatment.</p> <p>Based on the Prospecting Work Programme (PWP), trenches and pits will be 5m deep with possible maximum depth of 8m. Due to groundwater levels ranging between 10.1 and 26.9mbgl, measured during the borehole survey, no groundwater inflow is expected.</p> <p>Process water will be sourced from the Orange River. Based on the laboratory analysis of the Orange River abstraction point, no major constituents of concern were identified. The water from the Orange River is therefore suited for use during mining activities.</p> <p>The following recommendations were made:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is recommended that stormwater management and water recycling be implemented to ensure water runoff are limited to downgradient water bodies or water users;</li> <li>• Based on the groundwater laboratory results, consumption of water from LV-BH9, LVBH13 and LV-BH19 is not suitable for human consumption without treatment;</li> <li>• Given the low likelihood for the tailings material to impact on the groundwater, it is recommended that motivation is provided for a Type 4 Classification;</li> <li>• Groundwater Monitoring should be undertaken in accordance with SANS and DWS requirements in line with the recommended schedule. LV-BH12 and BH13 are recommended to be monitored; and</li> <li>• An annual compliance report should be compiled and submitted to the authorities for evaluation and comment. The monitoring network should be updated annually, and this report should be submitted annually.</li> </ul>		
<p><b>Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment Report compiled by Liezl Landman from Milnex CC</b></p>	<p><b><u>In Conclusion:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• According to the National Threatened Ecosystem database (2011), the study site overlaps with the Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation Ecosystem, a Vulnerable classed ecosystem.</li> <li>• According to the Northern Cape Biodiversity Sector Plan (2016), most of the study site is classified as either Critical Biodiversity Area 1 and 2, which are terrestrial and aquatic areas of the landscape that need to be maintained in a natural or near-natural state in order to ensure the continued existence and functioning of species and ecosystems and the delivery of ecosystem services.</li> <li>• According to the National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas Database (NFEP, 2011), one (1) Depression is present on site.</li> </ul>	<p>X</p>	<p><b>Pages:</b> 40, 41, 44, 47, 49, 61, 62, 68, 70, 77, 88, 109 – 114, 132 – 137, 155 – 160</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shepard’s Tree (<i>Boscia albitrunca</i>), a Protected Tree species of South Africa, was recorded on site, along with the protected Cannon Aloe (<i>Aloe claviflora</i>) and Bushman’s Hat (<i>Hoodia gordonii</i>).</li> <li>Several Alien and Invasive Vegetation Species were recorded on site.</li> <li>Two avifauna species potentially occurring on site, enjoys conservation status in the IUCN Red List, namely Ludwig’s Bustard (<i>Neotis ludwigii</i>) and Verreaux’s Eagle (<i>Aquila verreauxii</i>). Ludwig’s Bustard is also listed and protected under the Threatened and Protected Species list (ToPS, 2013) which is enforceable under the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004.</li> <li>Several species possibly occurring on site are protected under NEMBA. Although not listed in the species list.</li> <li>All Amphibian species are of Least Concern (LC), except for the Giant Bullfrog (<i>Pyxicephalus adspersus</i>) which is of special conservation concern and protected under NEMBA.</li> <li>The results of the wetland assessment is summarised in the table overleaf:</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Classification</th> <th>Scientific Buffer</th> <th>QHI</th> <th>VEGRAI</th> <th>REC</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Perennial Orange River</td> <td>180 m</td> <td>C</td> <td>D</td> <td>D</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Episodic Drainage Lines</td> <td>65 m</td> <td>C</td> <td>B/C</td> <td>B</td> </tr> <tr> <th>Classification</th> <th>Scientific Buffer</th> <th>PES</th> <th>EIS</th> <th>REC</th> </tr> <tr> <td>Depressions</td> <td>50 m</td> <td>C</td> <td>Moderate to High</td> <td>Low B</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Various potential impacts are associated with the proposed prospecting activities and are discussed in the impact assessment scores derived according to the amended EIA Regulations (2017).</li> </ul>	Classification	Scientific Buffer	QHI	VEGRAI	REC	Perennial Orange River	180 m	C	D	D	Episodic Drainage Lines	65 m	C	B/C	B	Classification	Scientific Buffer	PES	EIS	REC	Depressions	50 m	C	Moderate to High	Low B		
Classification	Scientific Buffer	QHI	VEGRAI	REC																								
Perennial Orange River	180 m	C	D	D																								
Episodic Drainage Lines	65 m	C	B/C	B																								
Classification	Scientific Buffer	PES	EIS	REC																								
Depressions	50 m	C	Moderate to High	Low B																								

	<p><b>Northern Cape Critical Biodiversity Areas (2016)</b></p> <p><b>Mining and Biodiversity Guidelines (2013)</b></p> <p><b>NEMA Impact Assessment</b></p> <p><b>DWS Risk Assessment</b></p> <p><b>Mitigation Measures</b></p> <p><b>Does the Specialist support the Application?</b></p>	<p>Large sections of the study site overlap with CBA1 and CBA2. These areas are mostly covered in natural vegetation. CBAs are areas that are irreplaceable for meeting biodiversity targets. There are no other options for conserving the ecosystems, species or ecological processes in these areas.</p> <p>Most of the study site overlaps with Category B, Highest Risk for Mining. Rigorous evaluation of the biodiversity content of applications is required, as well as the application of the mitigation hierarchy to reduce impacts on biodiversity in these areas. Therefore, the general area has highest biodiversity importance.</p> <p>Most of the impacts associated with the proposed prospecting range from Medium-Low to High prior to mitigation taking place. With mitigation fully implemented, the significance of most impacts can be reduced to Very Low, Low, Medium-Low or Medium-High.</p> <p>All aspects of the proposed mining activities fall within the Medium risk category.</p> <p>Refer to Section 6.4</p> <p>Yes</p>		
<p>It is imperative that an effective management plan is implemented to ensure that all mitigation measures discussed in the report are adhered to. Therefore, the proposed operations can be considered from an ecological conservation point of view. During the construction, operational and rehabilitation phases all recommendations made and concerns raised in this document should be taken into consideration. A good closure and rehabilitation plan should be in place to rehabilitate the habitat for faunal and floral species and active alien and invasive vegetation removal should take place in accordance with an Alien Invasive Vegetation Management Plan. All wetland exclusion/buffer zones should be avoided during prospecting.</p>				

## L. AN ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT WHICH CONTAINS—

### (i) a summary of the key findings of the environmental impact assessment:

This section provides a summary of the assessment and conclusions drawn from the proposed prospecting area. In doing so, it draws on the information gathered as part of the environmental impact assessment process and the knowledge gained by the environmental consultant during the course of the process and presents an informed opinion on the environmental impacts associated with the proposed project. The following conclusions can be drawn for the proposed prospecting activity:

- Potential impacts on biodiversity: According to the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment Report (Appendix 12) *various potential impacts are associated with the proposed prospecting activities and are discussed in the impact assessment scores derived according to the amended EIA Regulations (2017):*

Northern Cape Critical Biodiversity Areas (2016)	Large sections of the study site overlap with CBA1 and CBA2. These areas are mostly covered in natural vegetation. CBAs are areas that are irreplaceable for meeting biodiversity targets. There are no other options for conserving the ecosystems, species or ecological processes in these areas.
Mining and Biodiversity Guidelines (2013)	Most of the study site overlaps with Category B, Highest Risk for Mining. Rigorous evaluation of the biodiversity content of applications is required, as well as the application of the mitigation hierarchy to reduce impacts on biodiversity in these areas. Therefore, the general area has highest biodiversity importance.
NEMA Impact Assessment	Most of the impacts associated with the proposed prospecting range from Medium-Low to High prior to mitigation taking place. With mitigation fully implemented, the significance of most impacts can be reduced to Very Low, Low, Medium-Low or Medium-High.
DWS Risk Assessment	All aspects of the proposed mining activities fall within the Medium risk category.
Mitigation Measures	Refer to Section 6.4
Does the Specialist support the Application?	Yes

*It is imperative that an effective management plan is implemented to ensure that all mitigation measures discussed in the report are adhered to. Therefore, the proposed prospecting operations can be considered from an ecological conservation point of view. During the construction, operational and rehabilitation phases all recommendations made and concerns raised in this document should be taken into consideration. A good closure and rehabilitation plan should be in place to rehabilitate the habitat for faunal and floral species and active alien and invasive vegetation removal should take place in accordance with an Alien Invasive Vegetation Management Plan. All wetland exclusion/buffer zones should be avoided during prospecting.*

- Potential impact on heritage resources:

#### **Phase 1 Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment**

##### Identified sites

*Based on the survey and what was identified, within the framework of the proposed prospecting activities, three areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These sites are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.*

##### Mitigation measures:

- The three identified areas are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities and should be avoided
  - Avoidance/Preserve: This is viewed to be the primary form of mitigation and the site should be retained in situ and a buffer zone should be created around it, either temporary (by means of danger tape) or permanently (wire fence or built wall).

##### Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should be authorised:

- From a heritage point of view, it is recommended that the proposed prospecting activities be allowed to continue on acceptance of the proposed mitigation measures and the conditions proposed below.

#### **Palaeontological Desktop Assessment**

##### Findings and Recommendations

*The development is underlain by the Miocene to Recent Cenozoic Kalahari Group which are underlain by sediments of the Dwyka Group. The Palaeontological Sensitivity of the Kalahari Group is low and that of the Dwyka Group is low (Almond and Pether 2008, SAHRIS website). It is therefore considered that the proposed mining development is deemed appropriate and feasible and will not lead to detrimental impacts on the palaeontological resources of the area. Thus, the construction and operation of the mine may be authorised as the development footprint is not considered sensitive in terms of palaeontological resources.*

*If fossil remains are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the ECO/site manager in charge of these developments must be informed immediately. These discoveries ought to be secured (preferably in situ) and the ECO/site manager ought to alert SAHRA so that appropriate mitigation (documented and collection) can be undertaken by a professional palaeontologist.*

*The specialist would need a collection permit from SAHRA. Fossil material must be curated in an approved collection (museum or university) and all fieldwork and reports should meet the minimum standards for palaeontological impact studies developed by SAHRA.*

- Potential impacts on land use: According to the landowners, the proposed application area is currently used for grazing and crop production. There are homesteads on the proposed areas and some landowners are currently staying on the property.

Gravel roads, fencing, farmsteads, central pivot irrigation systems crop fields, and kraals were identified on site. The activity which will be subject to concurrent rehabilitation will still have a significant impact on the land use and will change the sense of place of the area.

- Potential social impacts: The presence of construction workers poses a potential risk to family structures and social networks. While the presence of construction workers does not in itself constitute a social impact, the manner in which construction workers conduct themselves can impact on local communities. The most significant negative impact is associated with the disruption of existing family structures and social networks.
- Potential negative impacts: (noise, dust, soil degradation, storm water, traffic, health and safety) associated with the operation of the facility are expected to be of low-medium impact, of medium terms and site specific. These can be mitigated or negated through the implementation of practical and appropriate mitigation measures.
- Positive impacts: The mining of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) will have socio-economic benefit to the area.

All possible negative impacts and risks that have been identified in this report can be effectively mitigated and managed by implementing the migratory measures as set out in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) attached in Part B. It is therefore recommended that the environmental authorisation for the prospecting right be granted.

- (i) **a map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity and its associated structures and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred [site] development footprint on the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers; and**

Provide a map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed overall activity and its associated structures and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers.



Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

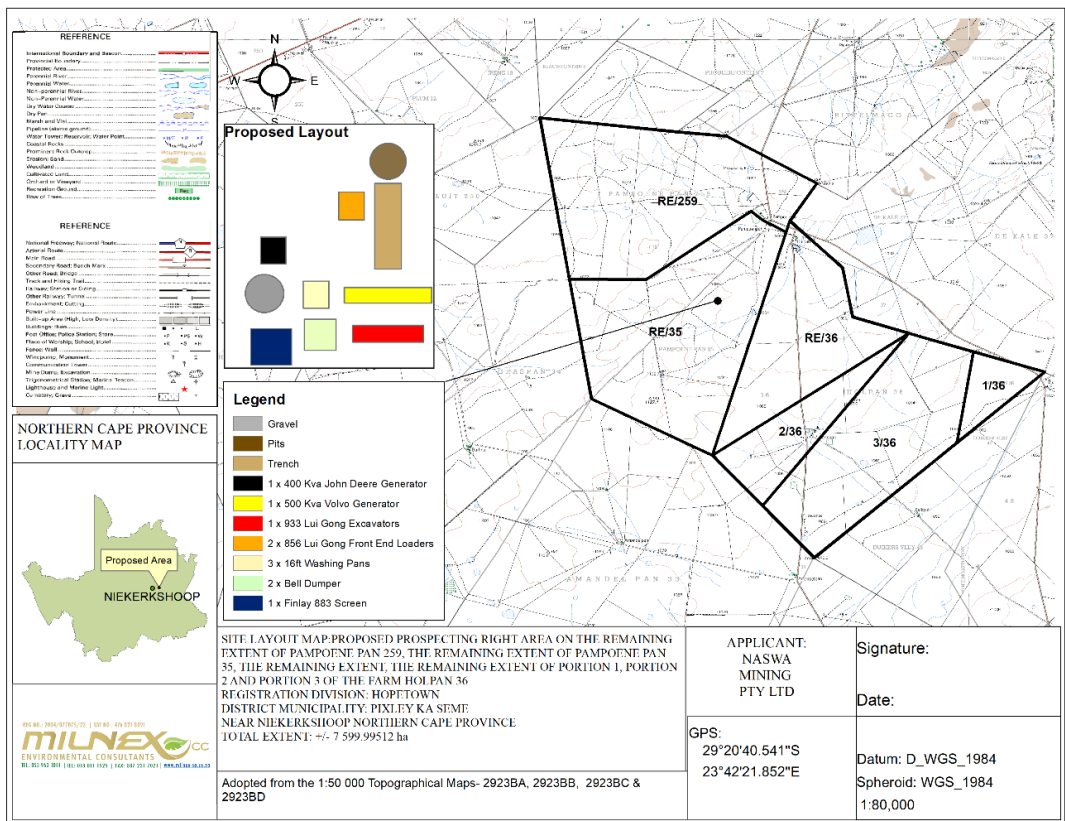


Figure 12: Site Plan

Refer to Site layout Map attached in **Appendix 4**.

**(ii) a summary of the positive and negative impacts and risks of the proposed activity and identified alternatives;**

There are regional socio economic benefits due to the Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) being prospected in the Northern Cape Province and greater knowledge is gained on the mineralogy of South Africa. All possible negative impacts and risks that have been identified in this report can be effectively mitigated and managed by implementing the mitigation measures as set out in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) attached in Part B. Significant adverse social environmental impacts are anticipated.

**M. PROPOSED IMPACT MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES FOR INCLUSION IN THE EMPR**

Based on the assessment and where applicable the recommendations from specialist reports, the recording of proposed [impact management objectives, and the] impact management outcomes for the development for inclusion in the EMPr as well as for inclusion as conditions of authorisation.

Management objectives include:

- Ensure that the prospecting activity does not cause pollution to the environment or harm to persons.
- Minimise production of waste.
- All prospecting activities must be conducted in a manner that minimises noise impact, litter, environmental degradation and health hazards i.e. injuries.
- The mine must be kept neat and tidy during waste handling to prevent unsightliness and accidents.

Expected outcomes include:

- Minimum impacts on the environment as a result of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) prospecting.

- Compliance with legislative requirements.
- Mine is neat and tidy and well managed.

#### **N. FINAL PROPOSED ALTERNATIVES.**

**(Provide an explanation for the final layout of the infrastructure and activities on the overall site as shown on the final site map together with the reasons why they are the final proposed alternatives which respond to the impact management measures, avoidance, and mitigation measures identified through the assessment)**

This alternative asks the question, if there is not, from an environmental perspective, a more suitable location for the proposed activity. Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape, are preferred due to the sites underlying Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) bearing gravel, therefore there will be no other alternative (i.e. to facilitate the movement of machinery, equipment, infrastructure).

#### **O. ASPECTS FOR INCLUSION AS CONDITIONS OF AUTHORISATION.**

**(Any aspects which were conditional to the findings of the assessment either by the EAP or specialist which are to be included as conditions of authorisation;)**

- The operational activities and relevant rehabilitation of disturbed areas should be monitored against the improved EMPr and all other relevant environmental legislation.
- A copy of the EMP should be made available onsite at all times.
- Implementation of the proposed mitigation measures set out in the EMPr.

#### **P. DESCRIPTION OF ANY ASSUMPTIONS, UNCERTAINTIES AND GAPS IN KNOWLEDGE.**

**(Which relate to the assessment and mitigation measures proposed)**

The uncertainties in results are mostly related to the availability of information, time available to gather the relevant information as well as the sometimes subjective nature of the assessment methodology. In terms of addressing the key issues the EAP is satisfied that there are no major gaps in knowledge and that the report provide sufficient information to conduct the significance rating and provide the environmental authority with sufficient information to make an informed decision.

#### **Q. REASONED OPINION AS TO WHETHER THE PROPOSED ACTIVITY SHOULD OR SHOULD NOT BE AUTHORISED**

**(and if the opinion is that it should be authorised, any conditions that should be made in respect of that authorisation;)**

##### **Reasons why the activity should be authorized or not.**

Based on the outcomes of other diamond mines in the area, the possibility to encounter further Diamond Reserves were identified.

The proposed prospecting area is targeted as, historically, several Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) occurrences are known in the area, and a number of these have been exploited in the past. There are also various Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) operations within the vicinity of the exploration area.

No other properties have been secured by the applicant and the site is therefore regarded as the preferred site, and alternatives are not considered.

The option of not approving the activities will result in a significant loss to valuable diamond deposits being exploited. And all economic benefits will be lost.

**Conditions that must be included in the authorisation**

- The operational activities and relevant rehabilitation of disturbed areas should be monitored against the improved EMPr and all other relevant environmental legislation.
- A copy of the EMP should be made available onsite at all times.
- Implementation of the proposed mitigation measures set out in the EMPr.

The EMPr should be binding on all managers and contractors operating/utilizing the site. The applicant shall familiarize himself with the content of this document and the attached specialist studies and the requirements/conditions thereof.

**R. PERIOD FOR WHICH THE ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION IS REQUIRED.**

For a minimum of 5 years.

**S. AN UNDERTAKING UNDER OATH OR AFFIRMATION BY THE EAP IN RELATION TO:**

Confirm that the undertaking required to meet the requirements of this section is provided at the end of the EMPr and is applicable to both the Basic assessment report and the Environmental Management Programme report.

The undertaking required to meet the requirements of this section is provided at the end of the EMPr and is applicable to both the Environmental Impact Assessment report and the Environmental Management Programme report.

I, Lizanne Esterhuizen, herewith confirms

- A. the correctness of the information provided in the reports
- B. the inclusion of comments and inputs from stakeholders and I&APs ;
- C. the inclusion of inputs and recommendations from the specialist reports where relevant;  and
- D. the acceptability of the project in relation to the finding of the assessment and level of mitigation proposed;



---

Signature of the environmental assessment practitioner:

Milnex CC – Environmental Consultants

---

Name of company:

21 – 09 - 2020

---

Date:

**T. FINANCIAL PROVISION**

**(where applicable, details of any financial provision[s] for the rehabilitation, closure, and ongoing post decommissioning management of negative environmental impacts;)**

XXXXX

**PHASE 3 - DRILLING**

**Calculations**

It is planned that 1000 boreholes will be drilled (it may be less depending on the results). The diameter of the borehole to be drilled will not be bigger than 150mm.

- 150mm / 1000 = 0.15m (from mm to m)
- 0.15m / 10 000 = 0.000015ha (from m to ha)
- 0.000015ha x 1000 boreholes = 0.015ha (total area of vegetation clearance for boreholes in ha)

The disturbance for 1000 boreholes is 0.015ha for 12 months.

**PHASE 4 - PITTING**

**Calculations**

It is planned that 150 pits will be dug (it may be less depending on the results) at an extent of 5m (length) x 5m (breadth) x 0.5m – 5m (depth).

- 150 pits will be dug in 6 months
- Total area to be disturbed in 6 months = 150 pits x (5m x 5m) / 10 000 = 0.375 Ha for 6 months

**PHASE 5 - TRENCHES**

**Calculations**

It is planned that 10-15 trenches will be dug (it may be less depending on the results) at an extent of 200m (length) x 100m (breadth) x 0.5m - 5m (depth).

- (15 trenches / 24 months) x 12 months = 7.5 trenches dug per year
- Total area to be disturbed per year = 7.5 trenches x (200m x 100m) / 10 000 = 15 Ha disturbed for 12 months
- Total area disturbed for 24 months = 15 trenches x (200m x 100m) / 10 000 = 30 Ha disturbed

<b>DRILLING: 12 months (months 7 – 18)</b>	
Area to be disturbed for 12 months for pitting drilling	0.015ha
<b>PITTING: 6 months (month 19 – 25)</b>	
Area to be disturbed for 6 months for pitting	150 pits x (5m x 5m) / 10 000 = 0.375 Ha
<b>TRENCHES 24 months (25 - 48 months)</b>	
Area to be disturbed for 12 months for trenches	15 Ha disturbed
Area to be disturbed for 24 months for trenches	30 Ha disturbed
However concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate trenches thus:	
The area to be disturbed for 1 trench	1 trench x (200m x 100m) / 10 000 = 2ha
3 trenches will be worked on at any given time:	
• 2 trenches will be open to remove gravel	2ha x 2 trenches = 4ha
• 1 trench will be backfilled and rehabilitated	2ha / 2 = 1ha
The area to be disturbed at any given time	4ha + 1ha = 5ha
After the trench is backfilled and rehabilitated only then will another trench be opened. This sequence will be done for the 15 trenches.	
<b>Total</b>	0.015ha + 0.375ha + 5ha = 5.39ha

Concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate. Please see the explanation below how concurrent rehabilitation is carried out:

Topsoil will be removed from trench no.1, where after it will be stored separately on the proposed area. Stored topsoil will be kept separate from overburden. Stored topsoil will be adequately protected from being eroded or blown away.

The exposed diamondiferous gravel of trench no.1 and no.2 will then be removed. The diamondiferous gravel will be sorted by means of a screen and all material larger than for example 100mm will be separated from the rest. This material will be used in the backfilling stage. Screened material for example smaller than 100mm will be fed into a wet rotary screen and then directly onto the washing pans.

As prospecting activities progress from trench no.2 towards the following trench no.3, backfilling and rehabilitation of trench no.1 will commence. The coarse gravel sifted at the screen, tailings from the pans and fine concrete will be transported back into open trench no.1. During this process of backfilling, variation in the dumping sequence of different sized materials will be followed to ensure better compaction and stability of the reclaimed gravel. This will ensure that voids surrounding the coarse gravel will be filled up with finer sediments. Compaction will be achieved through heavy vehicles during backfilling stage. This prospecting sequence will be utilised for the final rehabilitation of the last actively prospected trench.

Since concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate, the total area to be disturbed per year will be less than the above calculation. Because of the aforementioned the total area to be disturbed is divided by two. Following the aforementioned sequence will ensure that the maximum area to be disturbed by prospecting activities at any given time, is only approximately **5.39ha**

**A. Explain how the aforesaid amount was derived.**

The closure cost estimate provided above is aligned with the Guideline Document for the Evaluation of Quantum of Closure related Financial Provision Provided by a Mine, by the DMR (January, 2005). The amount was calculated by Milnex CC.

**B. Confirm that this amount can be provided for from operating expenditure.** (Confirm that the amount, is anticipated to be an operating cost and is provided for as such in the Mining work programme, Financial and Technical Competence Report or Prospecting Work Programme as the case may be).

**Financial Guarantee**

The financial guarantee for the rehabilitation for land disturbed by **Bondeo 140 CC** will be submitted

**Rehabilitation Fund**

**Bondeo 140 CC** will also make provision for rehabilitation during closure by establishing a rehabilitation trust.

**U. DEVIATIONS FROM THE APPROVED SCOPING REPORT AND PLAN OF STUDY.**

**(i) Any deviation from the methodology used in determining the significance of potential environmental impacts and risks; and**

None of the methodologies approved for the scoping report were deviated

**(ii) Motivation for the deviation.**

Not applicable

**V. ANY SPECIFIC INFORMATION THAT MAY BE REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY; AND**

## W. COMPLIANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTIONS 24(4)(A) AND (B) OF THE ACT

Read with Section 24 (3) (A) and (7) of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998). The EIA Report must include the:

- ii. **Impact on the socio-economic conditions of any directly affected person.** (Provide the results of Investigation, assessment, and evaluation of the impact of the mining, bulk sampling or alluvial diamond prospecting on any directly affected person including the landowner, lawful occupier, or, where applicable, potential beneficiaries of any land restitution claim, attach the investigation report as **Appendix 2.19.1** and confirm that the applicable mitigation is reflected in 2.5.3; 2.11.6 and 2.12.herein).

The diamonds alluvial prospecting will not impact directly on any socio-economic aspects. Indirect socio-economic benefits are expected to be associated with the creation of employment.

- iii. **Impact on any national estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act.** (Provide the results of Investigation, assessment, and evaluation of the impact of the mining, bulk sampling or alluvial diamond prospecting on any national estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999) with the exception of the national estate contemplated in section 3(2)(j)(vi) and (vii) of that Act, attach the investigation report as **Appendix 2.19.2** and confirm that the applicable mitigation is reflected in 2.5.3; 2.11.6 and 2.12.herein).

Special attention was given to the identification of possible cultural / heritage and palaeontological resources on site. A Phase 1 Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment was conducted by Dr. J. A. van Schalkwyk and a Palaeontological Desktop Assessment compiled by E. Butler from Banzai Environmental (Pty) Ltd. Please see their findings below:

### Phase 1 Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment

#### Identified sites

*Based on the survey and what was identified, within the framework of the proposed prospecting activities, three areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These sites are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.*

*Significant gravel terraces containing banded iron stone (Jaspelite) occur in or near the study area. Due to its general availability, this seems to have been the preferred material in this region, especially for use during the Middle Stone Age. However, lithics made from quartzite are also found. At Wouterspan, the gravel terrace occurs approximately 20-40m above the Orange River and appear to have been deposited in a braided river environment. The further away one moves from the river, off from the river terraces, the less such material is found, with a concurrent diminishing presence of Stone Age lithics. Based on the survey and what was identified, within the framework of the proposed prospecting activities, three areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These sites are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.*

**Site 1:** *Some poorly formed stone tools, classified as side- and end scrapers, dating to the Middle Stone Age was identified on the lower terrace of the Orange River. The material used is banded iron stone. Significant of this area is the presence of a single Early Stone Age hand-axe, the only one found in all of the various sections of the study area. Coordinates: S 29,34038; E 23,18431*

**Site 2:** *A large area, high on a ridge, directly above the Orange River. The lithics date to the Middle Stone Age and scrapers, blades, flakes and cores were identified. Of significance here it the fact that the material used is not only banded ironstone, but quartzite as well. Coordinates: S 29,37419; E 23,09825*

**Site 3:** *An area on the lower terrace where a high density of MSA lithics occur. The material used is mostly banded iron stone, although a few pieces made from quartzite were also recorded. Tools, flakes and cores were identified. Coordinates: S 29,39984; E 23,11374*

Please see Figure 18 in the report and **Appendix 12** for the colour map in the HIA

#### Impact assessment and proposed mitigation measures

*Impact analysis of cultural heritage resources under threat of the proposed prospecting activities is based on the present understanding of the project:*



Site No.	Site type	NHRA category	Field rating	Impact rating: Before/After mitigation
7.1.1	Archaeological material	Section 35	Generally protected: Medium significance – Grade IV-B	Medium (52) Low (18)

Mitigation measures:

- The three identified areas are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities and should be avoided
  - Avoidance/Preserve: This is viewed to be the primary form of mitigation and the site should be retained in situ and a buffer zone should be created around it, either temporary (by means of danger tape) or permanently (wire fence or built wall).

Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should be authorised:

- From a heritage point of view, it is recommended that the proposed prospecting activities be allowed to continue on acceptance of the proposed mitigation measures and the conditions proposed below.

**Palaeontological Desktop Assessment**

Summary of Impacts

The expected duration of the impact is assessed as potentially permanent to long term. In the absence of mitigation procedures (should fossil material be present within the affected area) the damage or destruction of any palaeontological materials will be permanent. Impacts on palaeontological heritage during the construction phase could potentially occur but are regarded as having a low probability. The significance of the impact occurring will be low.

Findings and Recommendations

The development is underlain by the Miocene to Recent Cenozoic Kalahari Group which are underlain by sediments of the Dwyka Group. The Palaeontological Sensitivity of the Kalahari Group is low and that of the Dwyka Group is low (Almond and Pether 2008, SAHRIS website). It is therefore considered that the proposed mining development is deemed appropriate and feasible and will not lead to detrimental impacts on the palaeontological resources of the area. Thus, the construction and operation of the mine may be authorised as the development footprint is not considered sensitive in terms of palaeontological resources.

If fossil remains are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the ECO/site manager in charge of these developments must be informed immediately. These discoveries ought to be secured (preferably in situ) and the ECO/site manager ought to alert SAHRA so that appropriate mitigation (documented and collection) can be undertaken by a professional palaeontologist.

The specialist would need a collection permit from SAHRA. Fossil material must be curated in an approved collection (museum or university) and all fieldwork and reports should meet the minimum standards for palaeontological impact studies developed by SAHRA.

**Other matters required in terms of sections 24(4)(a) and (b) of the Act.**

(the EAP managing the application must provide the competent authority with detailed, written proof of an investigation as required by section 24(4)(b)(i) of the Act and motivation if no reasonable or feasible alternatives, as contemplated in sub-regulation 22(2)(h), exist. The EAP must attach such motivation as **Appendix 4**).

The Remaining Extent of the farm Pampoene Pan 259; the Remaining Extent of the farm Pampoene Pan 35; Remaining Extent, Portion 2, Portion 3 (Portion of 1 – Gets Pan) and Remaining Extent of Portion 1 of the farm Holpan 36 are preferred due to the sites underlying geology and the shallowness of the diamond bearing gravel to the surface as well as site access (i.e. to facilitate the movement of machinery, equipment, infrastructure and people). The specific site has been chosen for its mineral resources thus making an alternative site selection null and void.

## PART B

### ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT

**An EMPr must comply with section 24N of the Act and include—**

**A. DETAILS OF—**

- (i) the EAP who prepared the EMPr; and
- (ii) the expertise of that EAP to prepare an EMPr, including a curriculum vitae;

Name of Practitioner	Qualifications	Contact details
Ms. Percy Sehaole Pr. Sci. Nat. EAPASA (2019/959)	Master's Degree in Environmental Science  Master's Degree in Environmental Management (refer to <b>Appendix 1</b> )	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925 Fax No.: (053) 963 2009 e-mail address: <a href="mailto:percy@milnex-sa.co.za">percy@milnex-sa.co.za</a>
Lizanne Esterhuizen	Honours Degree in Environmental Science (refer to <b>Appendix 1</b> )	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925 Fax No.: (053) 963 2009 e-mail address: <a href="mailto:lizanne@milnex-sa.co.za">lizanne@milnex-sa.co.za</a>

It is hereby confirmed that the requirements for the provision of the details and expertise of the EAP are contained in Part A, section 1(a) as required. The Curriculum Vitae for the responsible EAP is contained in **Appendix 1 and 2**.

**B. DESCRIPTION OF THE ASPECTS OF THE ACTIVITY**

**(a detailed description of the aspects of the activity that are covered by the EMPr as identified by the project description;)**

It is hereby confirmed that the requirements to describe the aspects of the activity that are required by the EMP is already included in Part A, section 1(h).

**C. COMPOSITE MAP**

**(a map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity, its associated structures, and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site, indicating any areas that [any areas that] should be avoided, including buffers;)**

Refer to Locality Map, attached as in **Appendix 4**.

**D. A DESCRIPTION OF THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT [OBJECTIVES] OUTCOMES, INCLUDING MANAGEMENT STATEMENTS, IDENTIFYING THE IMPACTS AND RISKS THAT NEED TO BE AVOIDED, MANAGED AND MITIGATED AS IDENTIFIED THROUGH THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS FOR ALL PHASES OF THE DEVELOPMENT INCLUDING—**

- i) **Determination of closure objectives.** (ensure that the closure objectives are informed by the type of environment described in 2.4 herein)

Closure objectives for the Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) mine will aim to ensure that the residual post-closure impacts be minimized and be acceptable to relevant parties. To achieve these closure objectives, the following will be implemented:

- All prospecting related infrastructure, foundations and concrete areas will be decommissioned, removed from the site and appropriately disposed of. Reclaimable structures such as metal, electrical installations or equipment will be sold for re-use or as scrap.
- All disturbed areas within the site not already vegetated will be re-vegetated with appropriate indigenous, ecologically adapted species appropriate to the area and the final land use as soon as possible after operation ceases. Progress of vegetation growth/establishment, stability and drainage/erosion will be monitored and, in the event of adverse trends being identified, corrective measures will be implemented.
- Vegetation monitoring will consider, inter alia, the establishment of perennial ground cover and infestation by alien invasive plant species. The encroachment of indigenous vegetation into the area will be used as an indication of a stable, self-sustaining vegetation cover with little risk of retrogressing to a situation where are and water pollution may occur.
- Final landforms must be resilient to perturbation and also be self-sustaining to obviate/limit further/ongoing interventions and maintenance by **Bondeo 140 CC**. The remaining impacts be of an acceptable nature with minimal deterioration over time.
- The final outcome of the mine site rehabilitation would be productive systems, where required sustaining either cattle or wildlife.
- Environmental and human quality of life, including health and safety requirements in general, would not be compromised; and
- Closure is achieved in an efficient and cost-effective manner as possible and with minimum socioeconomic changes.

## **E. A DESCRIPTION AND IDENTIFICATION OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES REQUIRED FOR THE ASPECTS CONTEMPLATED IN PARAGRAPH (D);]**

The above goal is underpinned by more specific objectives listed below.

### **1. Upfront planning/development**

To provide overall guidance and direction to closure planning and/or the implementation of progressive closure measures over the remaining over the prospecting life.

### **2. Physical stability**

To ensure that surface infrastructure and prospecting residue and/or disturbances that are present at processing plant decommissioning will be removed and/or stabilised in a manner that these will not compromise post-closure land use and be sustainable long-term landforms.

- Closure, removal and disposal of all surface infrastructure that has no beneficial post-closure use.
- Shaping and vegetating the remaining earth embankments, trenches, etc. to stabilise slopes and integrate with surrounding topography.

### **3. Environmental quality**

To ensure that local environmental quality is not adversely affected by possible physical effects arising from prospecting operations and the prospecting site after closure. This will be achieved by:

- Avoiding and/or limiting the following during prospecting operations which could result in adverse effects that could not be readily addressed and/or mitigated at mine closure.
  - Dust fall-out areas surrounding the prospecting site.
  - Wash-off and/or mobilisation of chemically contaminated soils and sediments from the prospecting site that could have long term adverse effects on local aquatic health and/or other water uses.
  - Possible shallow groundwater contamination adversely affecting the quality of the local water resource and its beneficial use.
- Limiting the potential for dust generation on the rehabilitated prospecting site that could cause nuisance and/or health effects to surrounding landowners;
- Limiting the possible adverse water quality and quantity effects arising from the rehabilitated prospecting site to ensure that long term beneficial use of local resources is not compromised;
- Conducting soil clean-up/remediation to ensure that the planned land use could be implemented and maintained;

### **4. Health and safety**

To limit the possible health and safety treats due to terrain hazards to humans and animals utilizing the rehabilitated prospecting site after closure by:

- Demonstrating through upfront soil testing that any resultant inorganic and organic pollution present on the site is acceptable;
- Removal of potential contaminants such as hydrocarbons and chemicals off site;
- Shaping of embankments and trenches to safe slopes and reintegrating of these into surrounding topography.

- Ensuring that the environmental quality as reflected above is achieved.

#### **5. Land capability / land use**

To ensure that the required land capability to achieve and support the planned land use can be achieved over the prospecting site by:

- Clean-up and reclamation of contaminated soil areas in order not to compromise the above land use planning earmarked for implementation;
- To ensure that the overall rehabilitated prospecting site is free draining
- Transferring prospecting related surface infrastructure to third parties for beneficial use after closure.

#### **6. Aesthetic quality**

To ensure that the rehabilitated prospecting site will display, at a minimum, an acceptable aesthetic appearance that would not compromise the planned land use by leaving behind:

- A prospecting area that is properly cleared-up with no fugitive/scattered waste piles
- Rehabilitated prospecting area that is free draining and disturbed areas that are suitably vegetated.
- Rehabilitated prospecting residues that are suitably landscaped, blending with the surrounding environment as far as possible.
- Shaped and rehabilitated terrace and hard stand areas, roughly emulating the local natural surface topography.

#### **7. Landscape viability**

To create a landscape that is self-sustaining and over time will evolve/converge to the desired ecosystem structure, function and composition by:

- Conducting surface profiling, with associated material movement optimisation, to obtain a landscape resembling the natural landscapes to support the succession trajectory towards a climax ecological system.
- Establishing woody patches and create “rough and loose” areas for pioneer specie establishment around the respective patches.
- Establishing pioneer species as follows:
  - Collected and prepared seeds for broad casting;
  - Seedlings grown on on-site nursery;
  - Cuttings collected from surrounding veld areas;
  - Conducting rehabilitation monitoring and corrective action as required.

#### **8. Biodiversity**

To encourage, where appropriate, the re-establishment of native vegetation on the rehabilitated mine site such the terrestrial biodiversity is largely re-instated over time, by:

- Stabilising disturbed areas to prevent erosion in the short- to medium term until a suitable vegetation cover has established; and
- Establishing viable self-sustaining vegetation communities of local fauna, as far as possible.

#### **F. A DESCRIPTION OF PROPOSED IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS, IDENTIFYING THE MANNER IN WHICH THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT [OBJECTIVES AND] OUTCOMES CONTEMPLATED IN PARAGRAPH (D) [AND (E)] WILL BE ACHIEVED, AND MUST, WHERE APPLICABLE, INCLUDE ACTIONS TO —**

**Provide a rehabilitation plan that describes and shows the scale and aerial extent of the main mining activities, including the anticipated mining area at the time of closure.**

The Rehabilitation & Closure Plan is attached as **Appendix 8**.

**Calculate and state the quantum of the financial provision required to manage and rehabilitate the environment in accordance with the applicable guideline.**

XXXXX

**PHASE 3 - DRILLING**

**Calculations**

It is planned that 1000 boreholes will be drilled (it may be less depending on the results). The diameter of the borehole to be drilled will not be bigger than 150mm.

- $150\text{mm} / 1000 = 0.15\text{m}$  (from mm to m)
- $0.15\text{m} / 10\ 000 = 0.000015\text{ha}$  (from m to ha)
- $0.000015\text{ha} \times 1000 \text{ boreholes} = 0.015\text{ha}$  (total area of vegetation clearance for boreholes in ha)

The disturbance for 1000 boreholes is 0.015ha for 12 months.

**PHASE 4 - PITTING**

**Calculations**

It is planned that 150 pits will be dug (it may be less depending on the results) at an extent of 5m (length) x 5m (breath) x 0.5m – 5m (depth).

- 150 pits will be dug in 6 months
- Total area to be disturbed in 6 months =  $150 \text{ pits} \times (5\text{m} \times 5\text{m}) / 10\ 000 = 0.375 \text{ Ha}$  for 6 months

**PHASE 5 - TRENCHES**

**Calculations**

It is planned that 10-15 trenches will be dug (it may be less depending on the results) at an extent of 200m (length) x 100m (breath) x 0.5m - 5m (depth).

- $(15 \text{ trenches} / 24 \text{ months}) \times 12 \text{ months} = 7.5 \text{ trenches}$  dug per year
- Total area to be disturbed per year =  $7.5 \text{ trenches} \times (200\text{m} \times 100\text{m}) / 10\ 000 = 15 \text{ Ha}$  disturbed for 12 months
- Total area disturbed for 24 months =  $15 \text{ trenches} \times (200\text{m} \times 100\text{m}) / 10\ 000 = 30 \text{ Ha}$  disturbed

<b>DRILLING: 12 months (months 7 – 18)</b>	
Area to be disturbed for 12 months for pitting drilling	0.015ha
<b>PITTING: 6 months (month 19 – 25)</b>	
Area to be disturbed for 6 months for pitting	$150 \text{ pits} \times (5\text{m} \times 5\text{m}) / 10\ 000 = 0.375 \text{ Ha}$
<b>TRENCHES 24 months (25 - 48 months)</b>	
Area to be disturbed for 12 months for trenches	15 Ha disturbed
Area to be disturbed for 24 months for trenches	30 Ha disturbed
However concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate trenches thus:	
The area to be disturbed for 1 trench	$1 \text{ trench} \times (200\text{m} \times 100\text{m}) / 10\ 000 = 2\text{ha}$
3 trenches will be worked on at any given time:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2 trenches will be open to remove gravel</li> <li>• 1 trench will be backfilled and rehabilitated</li> </ul>	$2\text{ha} \times 2 \text{ trenches} = 4\text{ha}$ $2\text{ha} / 2 = 1\text{ha}$
The area to be disturbed at any given time	$4\text{ha} + 1\text{ha} = 5\text{ha}$
After the trench is backfilled and rehabilitated only then will another trench be opened. This sequence will be done for the 15 trenches.	
<b>Total</b>	$0.015\text{ha} + 0.375\text{ha} + 5\text{ha} = 5.39\text{ha}$

Concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate. Please see the explanation below how concurrent rehabilitation is carried out:

Topsoil will be removed from trench no.1, where after it will be stored separately on the proposed area. Stored topsoil will be kept separate from overburden. Stored topsoil will be adequately protected from being eroded or blown away.

The exposed diamondiferous gravel of trench no.1 and no.2 will then be removed. The diamondiferous gravel will be sorted by means of a screen and all material larger than for example 100mm will be separated from the rest. This material will be used in the backfilling stage. Screened material for example smaller than 100mm will be fed into a wet rotary screen and then directly onto the washing pans.

As prospecting activities progress from trench no.2 towards the following trench no.3, backfilling and rehabilitation of trench no.1 will commence. The coarse gravel sifted at the screen, tailings from the pans and fine concrete will be transported back into open trench no.1. During this process of backfilling, variation in the dumping sequence of different sized materials will be followed to ensure better compaction and stability of the reclaimed gravel. This will ensure that voids surrounding the coarse gravel will be filled up with finer sediments. Compaction will be achieved through heavy vehicles during backfilling stage. This prospecting sequence will be utilised for the final rehabilitation of the last actively prospected trench.

Since concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate, the total area to be disturbed per year will be less than the above calculation. Because of the aforementioned the total area to be disturbed is divided by two. Following the aforementioned sequence will ensure that the maximum area to be disturbed by prospecting activities at any given time, is only approximately **5.39ha**

**a. Confirm that the financial provision will be provided as determined.**

**Financial Guarantee**

The financial guarantee for the rehabilitation for land disturbed **Bondeo 140 CC** will be submitted

**Rehabilitation Fund**

**Bondeo 140 CC** will also make provision for rehabilitation during closure by establishing a rehabilitation trust.



**IMPACTS TO BE MITIGATED IN THEIR RESPECTIVE PHASES**

**Measures to rehabilitate the environment affected by the undertaking of any listed activity**

<b>ACTIVITIES</b>  (E.g. For prospecting - drill site, site camp, ablution facility, accommodation, equipment storage, sample storage, site office, access route etc...etc...etc  E.g. For mining,- excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablution, stores, workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etc...etc...etc.)	<b>PHASE</b>  (of operation in which activity will take place.  State; Planning and design, Pre-Construction' Construction, Operational, Rehabilitation, Closure, Post closure).	<b>SIZE AND SCALE of disturbance</b>  (volumes, tonnages and hectares or m <sup>2</sup> )	<b>MITIGATION MEASURES</b>  (describe how each of the recommendations in herein will remedy the cause of pollution or degradation and migration of pollutants)	<b>COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS</b>  (A description of how each of the recommendations herein will comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practices that have been identified by Competent Authorities)	<b>TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION</b>  Describe the time period when the measures in the environmental management programme must be implemented Measures must be implemented when required. With regard to Rehabilitation specifically this must take place at the earliest opportunity. .With regard to Rehabilitation, therefore state either:- Upon cessation of the individual activity Or. Upon the cessation of mining, bulk sampling or Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) prospecting as the case may be.
Clearance of vegetation	Pitting and trenching phase- (construction and operation phase)	7 599.9512 ha – 3m x 3m x 4m (100 pits), 40m x 40m x 3m (50trenches)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Site clearing must take place in a phased manner, as and when required.</li> <li>2. Areas which are not to be prospected on within two months must not be cleared to reduce erosion risks.</li> <li>3. The area to be cleared must be clearly demarcated and this footprint strictly maintained.</li> <li>4. Spoil that is removed from the site must be removed to an approved spoil site or a licensed landfill site.</li> <li>5. The necessary silt fences and erosion control measures must be implemented in areas where these risks are more prevalent.</li> </ol>	Compliance with Duty of Care as detailed within NEMA	Duration of operations on the prospecting activities.

Construction of roads	Pitting and trenching phase- (construction and operation phase)	+- 500m	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Planning of access routes to the site for construction/prospecting purposes shall be done in conjunction with the Contractor and the Landowner. All agreements reached should be documented and no verbal agreements should be made. The Contractor shall clearly mark all access roads. Roads not to be used shall be marked with a "NO ENTRY for prospecting vehicles" sign.</li> <li>2. Construction routes and required access roads must be clearly defined.</li> <li>3. Damping down of the un-surfaced roads must be implemented to reduce dust and nuisance.</li> <li>4. Soils compacted by construction/prospecting activities shall be deep ripped to loosen compacted layers and re-graded to even running levels.</li> <li>5. The contractor must ensure that damage caused by related traffic to the gravel access road off the N8 is repaired continuously. The costs associated with the repair must be borne by the contractor;</li> <li>6. Dust suppression measures must be implemented for heavy vehicles such as wetting of gravel roads on a regular basis and ensuring that vehicles used to transport the gravel are fitted with tarpaulins or covers;</li> <li>7. All vehicles must be road-worthy and drivers must be qualified and made aware of the potential road safety issues and need for strict speed limits.</li> </ol>	Compliance with Duty of Care as detailed within NEMA	Duration of operations on the prospecting activities.
Prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA)	Pitting and trenching phase-	7 599.9512 ha – 3m x 3m x 4m (100 pits),	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Contractor should, prior to the commencement of earthworks determine the average depth of topsoil (If topsoil</li> </ol>	Compliance with Duty of Care as detailed within NEMA	Duration of operations on the mine

<p>and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) – Soils and geology</p>	<p>(construction and operation phase)</p>	<p>40m x 40m x 3m (50trenches)</p>	<p>exists), and agree on this with the ECO. The full depth of topsoil should be stripped from areas affected by construction and related activities prior to the commencement of major earthworks. This should include the building footprints, working areas and storage areas. Topsoil must be reused where possible to rehabilitate disturbed areas.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Care must be taken not to mix topsoil and subsoil during stripping.</li> <li>3. The topsoil must be conserved on site in and around the pit/trench area.</li> <li>4. Subsoil and overburden in the prospecting area should be stockpiled separately to be returned for backfilling in the correct soil horizon order.</li> <li>5. If stockpiles are exposed to windy conditions or heavy rain, they should be covered either by vegetation or geofabric, depending on the duration of the project. Stockpiles may further be protected by the construction of berms, trenches or low brick walls around their bases.</li> <li>6. Stockpiles should be kept clear of weeds and alien vegetation growth by regular weeding.</li> <li>7. Where contamination of soil is expected, analysis must be done prior to disposal of soil to determine the appropriate disposal route. Proof from an approved waste disposal site where contaminated soils are dumped if and when a spillage/leakage occurs should be attained and given to the project manager.</li> <li>8. The impact on the geology will be permanent. There is no mitigation measure.</li> </ol>		
--	---	------------------------------------	---	--	--

<p>Prospecting Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) – excavations</p>	<p>Pitting and trenching phase- (construction and operation phase)</p>	<p>7 599.9512 ha – 3m x 3m x 4m (100 pits), 40m x 40m x 3m (50trenches)</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The prospecting activities must aim to adhere to the relevant noise regulations and limit noise to within standard working hours in order to reduce disturbance of dwellings in close proximity to the development.</li> <li>2. Mine, pans, workshops and other noisy fixed facilities should be located well away from noise sensitive areas. Once the proposed final layouts are made available by the Contractor(s), the sites must be evaluated in detail and specific measures designed in to the system.</li> <li>3. Truck traffic should be routed away from noise sensitive areas, where possible.</li> <li>4. Noise levels must be kept within acceptable limits.</li> <li>5. Noisy operations should be combined so that they occur where possible at the same time.</li> <li>6. Mine workers to wear necessary ear protection gear.</li> <li>7. Noisy activities to take place during allocated hours.</li> <li>8. Noise from labourers must be controlled.</li> <li>9. Noise suppression measures must be applied to all equipment. Equipment must be kept in good working order and where appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site.</li> <li>10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the</li> </ol>	<p>Compliance with Duty of Care as detailed within NEMA</p>	<p>Duration of operations on the prospecting area</p>
---	--	---	---	---	---

			<p>Contractor or his Sub-Contractors by the Contractors own transport.</p> <p>11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.</p> <p>12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of a machine.</p>		
--	--	--	--	--	--

Mitigation measures from the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment Report (Appendix 12)

Impact	Source of Impact	Recommended Mitigation Measures
<p><b>Alteration of the flow regime of the watercourse</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Infrastructure development within watercourses</li> <li>• Removal and disturbance of watercourse habitat and vegetation</li> <li>• Habitat fragmentation</li> <li>• Impoundments within the watercourse</li> <li>• Lack of adequate rehabilitation resulting in colonization by invasive plants</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Excavation from the watercourses</li> <li>• Clearing of vegetation</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Any activities that take place within 32 meters of a wetland or watercourse or the 1:100 year flood lines will require authorisation in terms of the relevant regulations of NEMA, however as far as possible infrastructure should be placed outside of buffer lines.</li> <li>• Demarcate the watercourse areas and buffer zones to limit disturbance, clearly mark these areas as no-go areas.</li> <li>• No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>• All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>• Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed stream banks.</li> <li>• Ensure that erosion management and sediment controls are strictly implemented from the beginning of site clearing activities.</li> <li>• All areas should be re-sloped and top-soiled where necessary and reseeded with indigenous grasses to stabilise the loose material.</li> <li>• Monitor the occurrence of erosion during the rainy season and take immediate corrective action where needed.</li> <li>• A sensitivity map has been developed for the study area, indicating the wetland systems, and their relevant buffer zones. It is recommended that this sensitivity map be considered during all phases of the development and with special mentioning of the planning of infrastructure, in order to aid in the conservation of and minimise impact on the wetland and aquatic habitat and resources within the study site.</li> <li>• Any areas where bank failure is observed, due to the prospecting impacts, should be immediately repaired.</li> <li>• As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> <li>• Operational phase activities should not take place within watercourses or buffer zones.</li> <li>• The duration of impacts on the wetlands should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to</li> </ul>



		<p>prevent loss of floral habitat.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> <li>Rehabilitation of disturbed areas as a result of construction must be implemented immediately upon completion of construction.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Changing the physical structure within a water resource (habitat)</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Infrastructure development within watercourses</li> <li>Loss of vegetation</li> <li>Flow alteration</li> <li>Erosion</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Excavation from the watercourses leading to degraded river channels.</li> <li>Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> <li>Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> <li>Loss of biodiversity</li> <li>Alteration and/or loss of hydrological flow classes</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Other than approved and authorized structures, no other development or maintenance infrastructure is allowed within the delineated watercourse and riparian areas or their associated buffer zones.</li> <li>Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> <li>Monitor the occurrence of erosion during the rainy season and take immediate corrective action where needed.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Bi-annual biomonitoring of aquatic macro-invertebrates and diatoms within the riverine systems is essential.</li> <li>All maintenance within watercourses must be restricted to the dry season.</li> <li>Maintenance activities should not impact on rehabilitated or naturally vegetated areas.</li> <li>The duration of impacts on the riverine systems should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>Rehabilitation must ensure that wetland structure and function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the ongoing functionality of the systems at pre-mining levels.</li> <li>All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Alteration of the amount of sediment entering the water resource and associated change in turbidity</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vegetation clearance causing sedimentation</li> <li>Earthworks activities</li> <li>Disturbance of soil surface and runoff characteristics</li> <li>Erosion</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Excavation from the watercourses leading to degraded river channels.</li> <li>Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Buffer zones should be maintained, in order to minimise sedimentation of the downstream areas.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>Ensure that erosion management and sediment controls are strictly implemented from the beginning of site clearing activities.</li> <li>All areas should be re-sloped and top-soiled where necessary and reseeded with indigenous grasses to stabilise the loose material.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> <li>• Loss of biodiversity</li> <li>• Alteration and/or loss of hydrological flow classes</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<p>stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed stream banks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> <li>• Erosion control measures, such as berms, must be implemented to manage runoff from roads to prevent erosion and pollution.</li> <li>• Silt screens should be used where necessary.</li> <li>• Rehabilitation of disturbed areas as a result of construction must be implemented immediately upon completion of construction.</li> <li>• Rehabilitation must ensure that riparian structure and function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the ongoing functionality of the larger riparian systems at pre-mining levels.</li> <li>• All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> <li>• The duration of impacts on the riverine systems should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>• Maintain flood capacity, particularly in areas with significant flood hazards.</li> </ul>
<p>Alteration of water quality</p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintenance of vehicles and machinery</li> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> <li>• Excavation from the watercourses and the release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils</li> <li>• Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All vehicles must be regularly inspected for leaks.</li> <li>• Re-fuelling must take place on a sealed surface area to prevent hydrocarbon pollution.</li> <li>• All spills should be cleaned up immediately and disposed of.</li> <li>• Spill kits should be readily available and easily accessible throughout the site.</li> <li>• All chemicals must be stored safely on site, outside the buffer areas and surrounded by bunds. Chemical storage containers must be regularly inspected for early leak detection.</li> <li>• Littering must be prevented by effective site management and the provision of bins.</li> <li>• Provision of adequate sanitation facilities located outside of the delineated buffer zones.</li> <li>• An emergency spill procedure should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>• No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse.</li> <li>• All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>• Stockpiles must be located away from river channels, wetlands and drainage lines.</li> <li>• Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed riverbanks.</li> </ul>
<p>Loss of terrestrial habitat</p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Areas that are stripped during construction and operation should be re-vegetated with</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> </ul> <p><b>Operational:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removal of substrate within watercourses</li> <li>• Clearing of vegetation during mining operations</li> </ul> <p><b>Decommissioning:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<p>indigenous vegetation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is recommended that areas to be developed be specifically demarcated so that during the construction phase, only the demarcated areas be impacted upon (including fencing off the defined project area) and preventing movement of workers into natural areas.</li> <li>• The duration of the mining should be minimized to as short term as possible, in order to reduce the period of disturbance on fauna and flora.</li> <li>• Areas of indigenous vegetation should under no circumstances be fragmented or disturbed for used as an area for dumping of waste.</li> <li>• As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> <li>• All staff and visitors to the site must undergo an induction process and must be made aware of the sensitive nature of the environment and floral species which occur there.</li> <li>• The area must be re-vegetated with plant and grass species which are endemic to the exact vegetation types.</li> <li>• Rehabilitation measures that are implemented must be continually monitored for a minimum period of four years to ensure that proper succession has occurred and that there is no erosion occurring.</li> <li>• An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> </ul>
<p>Loss of Aquatic Biota</p>	<p><b>Construction:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Sedimentation</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> </ul> <p><b>Operational:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintenance of vehicles and machinery</li> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> <li>• Excavation from the watercourses and the release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils</li> <li>• Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> <li>• Sedimentation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bi-annual biomonitoring of aquatic macro-invertebrates and diatoms within the riverine systems is essential.</li> <li>• Refer to Mitigation Measures regarding water quality and sedimentation as listed above.</li> </ul>

<p><b>Loss of Terrestrial Fauna</b></p>	<p><u>Construction and Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vegetation loss and disturbance – clearing of vegetation</li> <li>• Excessive noise disturbances</li> <li>• Illegal hunting</li> <li>• Habitat fragmentation destruction</li> <li>• Vehicles driving through natural vegetated areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Site clearing to take place in a phased manner (where possible) to allow for any faunal species present to move away from the study site to the surrounding open space areas.</li> <li>• Prior and during vegetation clearance any larger fauna species noted should be given the opportunity to move away from the construction machinery.</li> <li>• Fauna species such as frogs and reptiles that have not moved away should be carefully and safely removed to a suitable location beyond the extent of the development footprint by a suitably qualified ECO trained in the handling and relocation of animals.</li> <li>• Fencing should be erected around the project area to prevent workers and members of the public from entering the surrounding environments. This fence should have small openings to allow wildlife to pass through.</li> <li>• Waste management must be a priority and all waste must be collected and stored adequately. It is recommended that all waste be removed from site on a weekly basis to prevent rodents and pests entering the site.</li> <li>• Should any sensitive or Red Data animal or bird species be encountered during the construction, operation and decommissioning activities, these should be relocated to natural areas in the vicinity. Any sensitive fauna that are inadvertently killed during earthmoving operations should be preserved as museum voucher specimens.</li> <li>• No hunting, trapping or killing of fauna are allowed.</li> <li>• Any lizards, snakes or monitors encountered should be allowed to escape to a suitable habitat away from disturbance.</li> <li>• General avoidance of snakes is the best policy if encountered. Snakes should not be intentionally harmed or killed and allowed free movement away from the area.</li> <li>• Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.</li> <li>• Noise must be kept to an absolute minimum at night to minimise all possible disturbances to amphibian species and nocturnal mammals.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Loss of Terrestrial Flora</b></p>	<p><u>Construction and Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vegetation clearance</li> <li>• Vehicles driving through natural vegetated areas</li> <li>• Habitat fragmentation and destruction</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Areas that are stripped during construction and operation should be re-vegetated with indigenous vegetation as soon as possible. This will also reduce the likelihood of encroachment by alien invasive plant species.</li> <li>• Protected trees and plants shall not be removed or damaged without prior approval, permits or licenses from the relevant authority, this is especially applicable to the Protected Witgat (<i>Boscia albitrunca</i>), which were present on site.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Introduction and spread of alien vegetation</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearing of vegetation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proliferation of alien and invasive species is expected within any disturbed areas particularly as there are some alien and invasive species present within the study site.</li> </ul>



	<p><b><u>Operational:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removal of substrate within watercourses</li> <li>• Clearing of vegetation during mining operations</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><b><u>Decommissioning:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<p>These species should be eradicated and controlled to prevent further spread beyond.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> <li>• Footprint areas should be kept as small as possible when removing alien plant species.</li> <li>• No vehicles should be allowed to drive through designated sensitive drainage and wetlands areas during the eradication of alien and weed species.</li> <li>• All alien vegetation in the riparian zone should be removed upon completion of mining activities and reseeded with indigenous grasses as specified by a suitably qualified specialist (ecologist).</li> </ul>
--	--	---

### IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES

(A description of impact management outcomes, identifying the standard of impact management required for the aspects contemplated in paragraph ());

<p><b>ACTIVITY</b> (whether listed or not listed).</p> <p>(E.g. Excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablation, stores, workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etc...etc...etc.).</p>	<p><b>POTENTIAL IMPACT</b></p> <p>(e.g. dust, noise, drainage surface disturbance, fly rock, surface water contamination, groundwater contamination, air pollution etc....etc...)</p>	<p><b>ASPECTS AFFECTED</b></p>	<p><b>PHASE</b> In which impact is anticipated</p> <p>(e.g. Construction, commissioning, operational Decommissioning, closure, post-closure)</p>	<p><b>MITIGATION TYPE</b></p> <p>(modify, remedy, control, or stop) through (e.g. noise control measures, storm-water control, dust control, rehabilitation, design measures, blasting controls, avoidance, relocation, alternative activity etc. etc)</p> <p>E.g.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Modify through alternative method.</b></li> <li>• <b>Control through noise control</b></li> <li>• <b>Control through management and monitoring</b></li> <li>• <b>Remedy through rehabilitation..</b></li> </ul>	<p><b>STANDARD TO BE ACHIEVED</b></p> <p>(Impact avoided, noise levels, dust levels, rehabilitation standards, end use objectives) etc.</p>
<p>Clearance of vegetation</p>	<p>Loss or fragmentation of habitats</p>	<p>Fauna &amp; flora</p>	<p>Pitting and trenching phase-(construction and operation phase)</p>	<p><b>Existing vegetation</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Vegetation removal must be limited to the prospecting area.</li> <li>2. Vegetation to be removed as it becomes necessary rather than removal of all vegetation throughout the site in one step.</li> <li>3. No vegetation to be used for firewood.</li> <li>4. Exotic and invasive plant species should not be allowed to establish, if the development is approved.</li> </ol> <p><b>Rehabilitation</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. All damaged areas shall be rehabilitated upon completion of the contract.</li> <li>6. Re-vegetation of the disturbed site is aimed at approximating as near as possible the natural vegetative conditions prevailing prior to construction.</li> <li>7. All natural areas impacted during construction/prospecting must be rehabilitated</li> </ol>	<p>Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits</p>

				<p>with locally indigenous grasses typical of the representative botanical unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8. Rehabilitation must take place in a phased approach as soon as possible.</li> <li>9. Rehabilitation process must make use of species indigenous to the area. Seeds from surrounding seed banks can be used for re-seeding.</li> <li>10. Rehabilitation must be executed in such a manner that surface run-off will not cause erosion of disturbed areas.</li> <li>11. Planting of indigenous tree species in areas not to be cultivated or built on must be encouraged.</li> </ol> <p><b>Demarcation of prospecting area</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>12. All plants not interfering with prospecting operations shall be left undisturbed clearly marked and indicated on the site plan.</li> <li>13. The prospecting area must be well demarcated and no construction/prospecting activities must be allowed outside of this demarcated footprint.</li> <li>14. Vegetation removal must be phased in order to reduce impact of construction/prospecting.</li> <li>15. Site office and laydown areas must be clearly demarcated and no encroachment must occur beyond demarcated areas.</li> <li>16. Strict and regular auditing of the prospecting process to ensure containment of the prospecting and laydown areas.</li> <li>17. Soils must be kept free of petrochemical solutions that may be kept on site during construction/prospecting. Spillage can result in a loss of soil functionality thus limiting the re-establishment of flora.</li> </ol> <p><b>Utilisation of resources</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>18. Gathering of firewood, fruit, muti plants, or any other natural material onsite or in areas adjacent to the site is prohibited unless with prior approval of the ECO.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--	--	--	--



				<p><b>Exotic vegetation</b></p> <p>19. Alien vegetation on the site will need to be controlled.</p> <p>20. The Contractor should be responsible for implementing a programme of weed control (particularly in areas where soil has been disturbed); and grassing of any remaining stockpiles to prevent weed invasion.</p> <p>21. The spread of exotic species occurring throughout the site should be controlled.</p> <p><b>Herbicides</b></p> <p>22. Herbicide use shall only be allowed according to contract specifications. The application shall be according to set specifications and under supervision of a qualified technician. The possibility of leaching into the surrounding environment shall be properly investigated and only environmentally friendly herbicides shall be used.</p> <p>23. The use of pesticides and herbicides on the site must be discouraged as these impact on important pollinator species of indigenous vegetation.</p> <p><b>Fauna</b></p> <p>24. Rehabilitation to be undertaken as soon as possible after the prospecting activities have been completed.</p> <p>25. No trapping or snaring to fauna on the construction/prospecting site should be allowed.</p> <p>26. No faunal species must be disturbed, trapped, hunted or killed by maintenance staff during any routine maintenance at the development.</p>	
Prospecting Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) – excavations	Loss of topsoil	Soil	Pitting and trenching phase-(construction and operation phase)	<p>1. The Contractor should, prior to the commencement of earthworks determine the average depth of topsoil, and agree on this with the ECO. The full depth of topsoil should be stripped from areas affected by construction and related activities prior to the commencement of major earthworks. This should include the</p>	Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits

				<p>building footprints, working areas and storage areas. Topsoil must be reused where possible to rehabilitate disturbed areas.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Care must be taken not to mix topsoil and subsoil during stripping.</li> <li>3. The topsoil must be conserved on site in and around the pit/trench area.</li> <li>4. Subsoil and overburden in the prospecting area should be stockpiled separately to be returned for backfilling in the correct soil horizon order.</li> <li>5. If stockpiles are exposed to windy conditions or heavy rain, they should be covered either by vegetation or geofabric, depending on the duration of the project. Stockpiles may further be protected by the construction of berms or low brick walls around their bases.</li> <li>6. Stockpiles should be kept clear of weeds and alien vegetation growth by regular weeding.</li> <li>7. Where contamination of soil is expected, analysis must be done prior to disposal of soil to determine the appropriate disposal route. Proof from an approved waste disposal site where contaminated soils are dumped if and when a spillage/leakage occurs should be attained and given to the project manager.</li> </ol> <p>Establish an effective record keeping system for each area where soil is disturbed for prospecting purposes. These records should be included in environmental performance reports, and should include all the records below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Record the GPS coordinates of each area.</li> <li>• Record the date of topsoil stripping.</li> <li>• Record the GPS coordinates of where the topsoil is stockpiled.</li> <li>• Record the date of cessation prospecting activities at the particular site.</li> <li>• Photograph the area on cessation of prospecting activities.</li> <li>• Record date and depth of re-spreading of topsoil.</li> </ul>	
--	--	--	--	--	--

				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photograph the area on completion of rehabilitation and on an annual basis thereafter to show vegetation establishment and evaluate progress of restoration over time.</li> </ul>	
	Erosion	Soil Air Water	Pitting and trenching phase-(construction and operation phase)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. An effective system of run-off control should be implemented, where it is required, that collects and safely disseminates run-off water from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion.</li> <li>2. Periodical site inspection should be included in environmental performance reporting that inspects the effectiveness of the run-off control system and specifically records the occurrence of any erosion on site or downstream.</li> <li>3. Wind screening and stormwater control should be undertaken to prevent soil loss from the site.</li> <li>4. The use of silt fences and sand bags must be implemented in areas that are susceptible to erosion.</li> <li>5. Other erosion control measures that can be implemented are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Brush packing with cleared vegetation</li> <li>○ Mulch or chip packing</li> <li>○ Planting of vegetation</li> <li>○ Hydroseeding/hand sowing</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. Sensitive areas need to be identified prior to construction/prospecting so that the necessary precautions can be implemented.</li> <li>7. All erosion control mechanisms need to be regularly maintained.</li> <li>8. Seeding of topsoil and subsoil stockpiles to prevent wind and water erosion of soil surfaces.</li> <li>9. Retention of vegetation where possible to avoid soil erosion.</li> <li>10. Vegetation clearance should be phased to ensure that the minimum area of soil is exposed to potential erosion at any one time.</li> <li>11. Re-vegetation of disturbed surfaces should occur immediately after construction/prospecting</li> </ol>	Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits

				<p>activities are completed. This should be done through seeding with indigenous grasses.</p> <p>12. No impediment to the natural water flow other than approved erosion control works is permitted.</p> <p>13. To prevent stormwater damage, the increase in stormwater run-off resulting from construction/prospecting activities must be estimated and the drainage system assessed accordingly.</p> <p>14. Stockpiles not used in three (3) months after stripping must be seeded or backfilled to prevent dust and erosion.</p>	
	Air Pollution	Air	Pitting and trenching phase-(construction and operation phase)	<p><b>Dust control</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Wheel washing and damping down of un-surfaced and un-vegetated areas.</li> <li>2. Retention of vegetation where possible will reduce dust travel.</li> <li>3. Clearing activities must only be done during agreed working times and permitting weather conditions to avoid drifting of sand and dust into neighbouring areas.</li> <li>4. Damping down of all exposed soil surfaces with a water bowser or sprinklers when necessary to reduce dust.</li> <li>5. The Contractor shall be responsible for dust control on site to ensure no nuisance is caused to the neighbouring communities.</li> <li>6. A speed limit of 30km/h must not be exceeded on site.</li> <li>7. Any complaints or claims emanating from the lack of dust control shall be attended to immediately by the Contractor.</li> <li>8. Any dirt roads that are utilised by the workers must be regularly maintained to ensure that dust levels are controlled.</li> </ol> <p><b>Odour control</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>9. Regular servicing of vehicles in order to limit gaseous emissions.</li> </ol>	Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits

				<p>10. Regular servicing of onsite toilets to avoid potential odours.</p> <p><b>Rehabilitation</b></p> <p>11. The Contractor should commence rehabilitation of exposed soil surfaces as soon as practical after completion of earthworks.</p> <p><b>Fire prevention</b></p> <p>12. No open fires shall be allowed on site under any circumstance. All cooking shall be done in demarcated areas that are safe and cannot cause runaway fires.</p> <p>13. The Contractor shall have operational fire-fighting equipment available on site at all times. The level of firefighting equipment must be assessed and evaluated through a typical risk assessment process.</p>	
	Noise		Pitting and trenching phase-(construction and operation phase)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The prospecting activities must aim to adhere to the relevant noise regulations and limit noise to within standard working hours in order to reduce disturbance of dwellings in close proximity to the development.</li> <li>2. Mine, crushers, workshops and other noisy fixed facilities should be located well away from noise sensitive areas. Once the proposed final layouts are made available by the Contractor(s), the sites must be evaluated in detail and specific measures designed in to the system.</li> <li>3. Truck traffic should be routed away from noise sensitive areas, where possible.</li> <li>4. Noise levels must be kept within acceptable limits.</li> <li>5. Noisy operations should be combined so that they occur where possible at the same time.</li> <li>6. Mine workers to wear necessary ear protection gear.</li> <li>7. Noisy activities to take place during allocated hours.</li> <li>8. Noise from labourers must be controlled.</li> </ol>	Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits

				<p>9. Noise suppression measures must be applied to all equipment. Equipment must be kept in good working order and where appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site.</p> <p>10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub-Contractors by the Contractors own transport.</p> <p>11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.</p> <p>12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of a machine.</p>	
	Impact on potential cultural and heritage artefacts	Heritage	Pitting and trenching phase-(construction and operation phase)	<p>1. Any finds must be reported to the nearest National Monuments office to comply with the National Heritage Resources Act (Act No 25 of 1999) and to DEA.</p> <p>2. Local museums as well as the South African Heritage Resource Agency (SAHRA) should be informed if any artefacts/ fossils are uncovered in the affected area.</p> <p>3. The Contractor must ensure that his workforce is aware of the necessity of reporting any possible historical, archaeological or palaeontological finds to the ECO so that appropriate action can be taken.</p> <p>4. Known sites should be clearly marked in order that they can be avoided. The work force should also be informed that fenced-off areas are no-go areas.</p> <p>5. The ECO must also survey for heritage and palaeontological artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a</p>	Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits

				<p>palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</p> <p>6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</p> <p>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</p> <p>8. Under no circumstances shall any artefacts be removed, destroyed or interfered with by anyone on the site; and contractors and workers shall be advised of the penalties associated with the unlawful removal of cultural, historical, archaeological or palaeontological artefacts, as set out in the NHRA (Act No. 25 of 1999), Section 51. (1).</p> <p>9. If anything of Archaeological and/or paleontological significance is found during the construction and operational phase of the mine the following applies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NHRA 38(4)c(i) – If any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed development, SAHRA APM Unit (021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an</li> </ul>	
--	--	--	--	--	--



				<p>offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NHRA 38(4)c(ii) – If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;</li> <li>• NHRA 38(4)e – The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists: i) If heritage resources are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a Phase 2 rescue operation may be required subject to permits issued by SAHRA;</li> </ul> <p><b><u>HIA findings and mitigation:</u></b>  Three (3) areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These site are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.</p> <p><b>Site 1</b> – Coordinates: S 29,34038; E 23,18431  <b>Site 2</b> – Coordinates: S 29,37419; E 23,09825  <b>Site 3</b> – Coordinates: S 29,39984; E 23,11374</p> <p>With the coordinates presented above as central point, the following areas has to be set out and avoided.  <b>Site 1</b> – 3,82ha</p>	
--	--	--	--	---	--

				<p><b>Site 2 – 3,63ha</b>  <b>Site 2 – 9,26ha</b></p> <p>(1) Avoidance/Preserve: This is viewed to be the primary form of mitigation and applies where any type of development occurs within a formally protected or significant or sensitive heritage context and is likely to have a high negative impact. This measure often includes the change / alteration of development planning and therefore impact zones in order not to impact on resources. The site should be retained in situ and a buffer zone should be created around it, either temporary (by means of danger tape) or permanently (wire fence or built wall).</p>	
Waste management		Pollution	Pitting and trenching phase-(construction and operation phase)	<p><b>Litter management</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refuse bins must be placed at strategic positions to ensure that litter does not accumulate within the construction site.</li> <li>2. The Contractor shall supply waste collection bins where such is not available and all solid waste collected shall be disposed of at registered/licensed landfill.</li> <li>3. Good housekeeping practices should be implemented to regularly maintain the litter and rubble situation on the construction site.</li> <li>4. If possible and feasible, all waste generated on site must be separated into glass, plastic, paper, metal and wood and recycled. An independent contractor can be appointed to conduct this recycling.</li> <li>5. Littering by the employees of the Contractor shall not be allowed under any circumstances. The ECO shall monitor the neatness of the work sites as well as the Contractor campsite.</li> <li>6. Skip waste containers should be maintained on site. These should be kept covered and arrangements made for them to be collected regularly.</li> </ol>	Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits

				<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. All waste must be removed from the site and transported to a landfill site promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin or produce odours.</li> <li>8. Where a registered waste site is not available close to the construction site, the Contractor shall provide a method statement with regard to waste management.</li> <li>9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.</li> <li>10. Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site.</li> <li>11. All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin or produce odours.</li> </ol> <p><b>Hazardous waste</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>12. All waste hazardous materials must be carefully stored as advised by the ECO, and then disposed of offsite at a licensed landfill site, where practical. Incineration may be used where relevant.</li> <li>13. Contaminants to be stored safely to avoid spillage.</li> <li>14. Machinery must be properly maintained to keep oil leaks in check.</li> <li>15. All necessary precaution measures shall be taken to prevent soil or surface water pollution from hazardous materials used during construction and any spills shall immediately be cleaned up and all affected areas rehabilitated.</li> </ol> <p><b>Sanitation</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>16. The Contractor shall install mobile chemical toilets on the site.</li> <li>17. Staff shall be sensitised to the fact that they should use these facilities at all times. No indiscriminate sanitary activities on site shall be allowed.</li> <li>18. Toilets shall be serviced regularly and the ECO shall inspect toilets regularly.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--	--	---	--

				<p>19. Toilets should be no closer than 50m or above the 1:100 year flood line from any natural or manmade water bodies or drainage lines or alternatively located in a place approved of by the Engineer.</p> <p>20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility.</p> <p>21. The construction of “Long Drop” toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant.</p> <p>22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff.</p> <p><b>Remedial actions</b></p> <p>23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.</p> <p>24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.</p> <p>25. The ECO must determine the precise method of treatment for polluted soil. This could involve the application of soil absorbent materials as well as oil-digestive powders to the contaminated soil.</p> <p>26. If a spill occurs on an impermeable surface such as cement or concrete, the surface spill must be contained using oil absorbent material.</p> <p>27. If necessary, oil absorbent sheets or pads must be attached to leaky machinery or infrastructure.</p> <p>28. Materials used for the remediation of petrochemical spills must be used according to product specifications and guidance for use.</p> <p>29. Contaminated remediation materials must be carefully removed from the area of the spill so as to prevent further release of petrochemicals to the environment, and stored in adequate containers until appropriate disposal.</p>	
--	--	--	--	---	--

Water Use and Quality	Water pollution	Water	Pitting and trenching phase-(construction and operation phase)	<p><b>Water Use</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Develop a sustainable water supply management plan to minimise the impact to natural systems by managing water use, avoiding depletion of aquifers and minimising impacts to water users.</li> <li>2. Water must be reused, recycled or treated where possible.</li> </ol> <p><b>Water Quality</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. The quality and quantity of effluent streams discharged to the environment including stormwater should be managed and treated to meet applicable effluent discharge guidelines.</li> <li>4. Discharge to surface water should not result in contaminant concentrations in excess of local ambient water quality criteria outside a scientifically established mixing zone.</li> <li>5. Efficient oil and grease traps or sumps should be installed and maintained at refueling facilities, workshops, fuel storage depots, and containment areas and spill kits should be available with emergency response plans.</li> </ol> <p><b>Stormwater</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. The site must be managed in order to prevent pollution of drains, downstream watercourses or groundwater, due to suspended solids and silt or chemical pollutants.</li> <li>7. Silt fences should be used to prevent any soil entering the stormwater drains.</li> <li>8. Temporary cut off drains and berms may be required to capture stormwater and promote infiltration.</li> <li>9. Promote a water saving mind set with construction/prospecting workers in order to Contractor ensure less water wastage.</li> <li>10. Hazardous substances must be stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution.</li> </ol>	
-----------------------	-----------------	-------	--	---	--

				<p>11. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</p> <p>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</p> <p>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</p> <p>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm water system or nearby streams, rivers or erosion channels or dongas.</p> <p>15. The cut-off trenches and silt fences will be installed where necessary as to control runoff storm water by attenuating it and control the movement of sediment on the premises. These structures will be monitored on a regular basis. It is suggested that it be monitored on a weekly basis during the rainy season, and after possible rain events during the dry season. If these practices are found to be insufficient for the control of storm water and sedimentation, other alternatives should immediately be investigated and implemented.</p> <p><b>Groundwater resource protection</b></p> <p>16. Process solution storage ponds and other impoundments designed to hold non fresh water or non-treated process effluents should be lined and be equipped with sufficient wells to enable monitoring of water levels and quality.</p> <p>17. Prevent dirty water runoff from leaving the general mining area;</p>	
--	--	--	--	---	--

				<p>18. Compact the base of dirty areas, like the workshops and oil and diesel storage areas to minimise infiltration of poor-quality water to the underlying aquifers;</p> <p>19. Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</p> <p>20. Contain dirty water in return water dams and re-use dirty water for dust suppression and make up water in the plant;</p> <p>21. Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</p> <p>22. A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as stipulated in the DWS Best Practice Guidelines. The implementation of the mine closure plan, and the application for the closure certificate can be conducted during the decommissioned phase.</p> <p><b>Sanitation</b></p> <p>23. Adequate sanitary facilities and ablutions must be provided for construction workers (1 toilet per every 15 workers).</p> <p>24. The facilities must be regularly serviced to reduce the risk of surface or groundwater pollution.</p> <p><b>Concrete mixing</b></p> <p>25. Concrete contaminated water must not enter soil or any natural drainage system as this disturbs the natural acidity of the soil and affects plant growth.</p> <p><b>Public areas</b></p> <p>26. Food preparation areas should be provided with adequate washing facilities and food refuse</p>	
--	--	--	--	--	--



				<p>should be stored in sealed refuse bins which should be removed from site on a regular basis.</p> <p>27. The Contractor should take steps to ensure that littering by construction/prospecting workers does not occur and persons should be employed on site to collect litter from the site and immediate surroundings, including litter accumulating at fence lines.</p> <p>28. No washing or servicing of vehicles on site.</p> <p><b>Infrastructure</b></p> <p>29. Infrastructure should adhere to the GN704 of the South African National Water Act (36 of 1998) and not be located within the 1:100- year Return Period flood line. This is essential for the safety of human life as well as for the protection of infrastructure from flood inundation and destruction.</p>	
--	--	--	--	---	--

Mitigation measures from the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment Report (Appendix 12)

Impact	Source of Impact	Recommended Mitigation Measures
<p><b>Alteration of the flow regime of the watercourse</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Infrastructure development within watercourses</li> <li>• Removal and disturbance of watercourse habitat and vegetation</li> <li>• Habitat fragmentation</li> <li>• Impoundments within the watercourse</li> <li>• Lack of adequate rehabilitation resulting in colonization by invasive plants</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Excavation from the watercourses</li> <li>• Clearing of vegetation</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Any activities that take place within 32 meters of a wetland or watercourse or the 1:100 year flood lines will require authorisation in terms of the relevant regulations of NEMA, however as far as possible infrastructure should be placed outside of buffer lines.</li> <li>• Demarcate the watercourse areas and buffer zones to limit disturbance, clearly mark these areas as no-go areas.</li> <li>• No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>• All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>• Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed stream banks.</li> <li>• Ensure that erosion management and sediment controls are strictly implemented from the beginning of site clearing activities.</li> <li>• All areas should be re-sloped and top-soiled where necessary and reseeded with indigenous grasses to stabilise the loose material.</li> <li>• Monitor the occurrence of erosion during the rainy season and take immediate corrective action where needed.</li> <li>• A sensitivity map has been developed for the study area, indicating the wetland systems, and their relevant buffer zones. It is recommended that this sensitivity map be considered during all phases of the development and with special mentioning of the planning of infrastructure, in order to aid in the conservation of and minimise impact on the wetland and aquatic habitat and resources within the study site.</li> <li>• Any areas where bank failure is observed, due to the prospecting impacts, should be immediately repaired.</li> <li>• As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> <li>• Operational phase activities should not take place within watercourses or buffer zones.</li> <li>• The duration of impacts on the wetlands should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to</li> </ul>

		<p>prevent loss of floral habitat.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> <li>Rehabilitation of disturbed areas as a result of construction must be implemented immediately upon completion of construction.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Changing the physical structure within a water resource (habitat)</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Infrastructure development within watercourses</li> <li>Loss of vegetation</li> <li>Flow alteration</li> <li>Erosion</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Excavation from the watercourses leading to degraded river channels.</li> <li>Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> <li>Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> <li>Loss of biodiversity</li> <li>Alteration and/or loss of hydrological flow classes</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Other than approved and authorized structures, no other development or maintenance infrastructure is allowed within the delineated watercourse and riparian areas or their associated buffer zones.</li> <li>Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> <li>Monitor the occurrence of erosion during the rainy season and take immediate corrective action where needed.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Bi-annual biomonitoring of aquatic macro-invertebrates and diatoms within the riverine systems is essential.</li> <li>All maintenance within watercourses must be restricted to the dry season.</li> <li>Maintenance activities should not impact on rehabilitated or naturally vegetated areas.</li> <li>The duration of impacts on the riverine systems should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>Rehabilitation must ensure that wetland structure and function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the ongoing functionality of the systems at pre-mining levels.</li> <li>All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Alteration of the amount of sediment entering the water resource and associated change in turbidity</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vegetation clearance causing sedimentation</li> <li>Earthworks activities</li> <li>Disturbance of soil surface and runoff characteristics</li> <li>Erosion</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Excavation from the watercourses leading to degraded river channels.</li> <li>Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Buffer zones should be maintained, in order to minimise sedimentation of the downstream areas.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>Ensure that erosion management and sediment controls are strictly implemented from the beginning of site clearing activities.</li> <li>All areas should be re-sloped and top-soiled where necessary and reseeded with indigenous grasses to stabilise the loose material.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> <li>• Loss of biodiversity</li> <li>• Alteration and/or loss of hydrological flow classes</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<p>stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed stream banks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> <li>• Erosion control measures, such as berms, must be implemented to manage runoff from roads to prevent erosion and pollution.</li> <li>• Silt screens should be used where necessary.</li> <li>• Rehabilitation of disturbed areas as a result of construction must be implemented immediately upon completion of construction.</li> <li>• Rehabilitation must ensure that riparian structure and function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the ongoing functionality of the larger riparian systems at pre-mining levels.</li> <li>• All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> <li>• The duration of impacts on the riverine systems should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>• Maintain flood capacity, particularly in areas with significant flood hazards.</li> </ul>
Alteration of water quality	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintenance of vehicles and machinery</li> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> <li>• Excavation from the watercourses and the release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils</li> <li>• Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All vehicles must be regularly inspected for leaks.</li> <li>• Re-fuelling must take place on a sealed surface area to prevent hydrocarbon pollution.</li> <li>• All spills should be cleaned up immediately and disposed of.</li> <li>• Spill kits should be readily available and easily accessible throughout the site.</li> <li>• All chemicals must be stored safely on site, outside the buffer areas and surrounded by bunds. Chemical storage containers must be regularly inspected for early leak detection.</li> <li>• Littering must be prevented by effective site management and the provision of bins.</li> <li>• Provision of adequate sanitation facilities located outside of the delineated buffer zones.</li> <li>• An emergency spill procedure should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>• No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse.</li> <li>• All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>• Stockpiles must be located away from river channels, wetlands and drainage lines.</li> <li>• Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed riverbanks.</li> </ul>
Loss of terrestrial habitat	<p><u>Construction:</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Areas that are stripped during construction and operation should be re-vegetated with</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> </ul> <p><b>Operational:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removal of substrate within watercourses</li> <li>• Clearing of vegetation during mining operations</li> </ul> <p><b>Decommissioning:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<p>indigenous vegetation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is recommended that areas to be developed be specifically demarcated so that during the construction phase, only the demarcated areas be impacted upon (including fencing off the defined project area) and preventing movement of workers into natural areas.</li> <li>• The duration of the mining should be minimized to as short term as possible, in order to reduce the period of disturbance on fauna and flora.</li> <li>• Areas of indigenous vegetation should under no circumstances be fragmented or disturbed for used as an area for dumping of waste.</li> <li>• As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> <li>• All staff and visitors to the site must undergo an induction process and must be made aware of the sensitive nature of the environment and floral species which occur there.</li> <li>• The area must be re-vegetated with plant and grass species which are endemic to the exact vegetation types.</li> <li>• Rehabilitation measures that are implemented must be continually monitored for a minimum period of four years to ensure that proper succession has occurred and that there is no erosion occurring.</li> <li>• An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> </ul>
<p>Loss of Aquatic Biota</p>	<p><b>Construction:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Sedimentation</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> </ul> <p><b>Operational:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintenance of vehicles and machinery</li> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> <li>• Excavation from the watercourses and the release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils</li> <li>• Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> <li>• Sedimentation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bi-annual biomonitoring of aquatic macro-invertebrates and diatoms within the riverine systems is essential.</li> <li>• Refer to Mitigation Measures regarding water quality and sedimentation as listed above.</li> </ul>



<p><b>Loss of Terrestrial Fauna</b></p>	<p><u>Construction and Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vegetation loss and disturbance – clearing of vegetation</li> <li>• Excessive noise disturbances</li> <li>• Illegal hunting</li> <li>• Habitat fragmentation destruction</li> <li>• Vehicles driving through natural vegetated areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Site clearing to take place in a phased manner (where possible) to allow for any faunal species present to move away from the study site to the surrounding open space areas.</li> <li>• Prior and during vegetation clearance any larger fauna species noted should be given the opportunity to move away from the construction machinery.</li> <li>• Fauna species such as frogs and reptiles that have not moved away should be carefully and safely removed to a suitable location beyond the extent of the development footprint by a suitably qualified ECO trained in the handling and relocation of animals.</li> <li>• Fencing should be erected around the project area to prevent workers and members of the public from entering the surrounding environments. This fence should have small openings to allow wildlife to pass through.</li> <li>• Waste management must be a priority and all waste must be collected and stored adequately. It is recommended that all waste be removed from site on a weekly basis to prevent rodents and pests entering the site.</li> <li>• Should any sensitive or Red Data animal or bird species be encountered during the construction, operation and decommissioning activities, these should be relocated to natural areas in the vicinity. Any sensitive fauna that are inadvertently killed during earthmoving operations should be preserved as museum voucher specimens.</li> <li>• No hunting, trapping or killing of fauna are allowed.</li> <li>• Any lizards, snakes or monitors encountered should be allowed to escape to a suitable habitat away from disturbance.</li> <li>• General avoidance of snakes is the best policy if encountered. Snakes should not be intentionally harmed or killed and allowed free movement away from the area.</li> <li>• Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.</li> <li>• Noise must be kept to an absolute minimum at night to minimise all possible disturbances to amphibian species and nocturnal mammals.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Loss of Terrestrial Flora</b></p>	<p><u>Construction and Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vegetation clearance</li> <li>• Vehicles driving through natural vegetated areas</li> <li>• Habitat fragmentation and destruction</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Areas that are stripped during construction and operation should be re-vegetated with indigenous vegetation as soon as possible. This will also reduce the likelihood of encroachment by alien invasive plant species.</li> <li>• Protected trees and plants shall not be removed or damaged without prior approval, permits or licenses from the relevant authority, this is especially applicable to the Protected Witgat (<i>Boscia albitrunca</i>), which were present on site.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Introduction and spread of alien vegetation</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearing of vegetation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proliferation of alien and invasive species is expected within any disturbed areas particularly as there are some alien and invasive species present within the study site.</li> </ul>

	<p><b><u>Operational:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removal of substrate within watercourses</li> <li>• Clearing of vegetation during mining operations</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><b><u>Decommissioning:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<p>These species should be eradicated and controlled to prevent further spread beyond.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> <li>• Footprint areas should be kept as small as possible when removing alien plant species.</li> <li>• No vehicles should be allowed to drive through designated sensitive drainage and wetlands areas during the eradication of alien and weed species.</li> <li>• All alien vegetation in the riparian zone should be removed upon completion of mining activities and reseeded with indigenous grasses as specified by a suitably qualified specialist (ecologist).</li> </ul>
--	--	---



### IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS

(A description of impact management actions, identifying the manner in which the impact management objectives and outcomes contemplated in paragraphs (c) and (d) will be achieved).

<p><b>ACTIVITY</b> Whether listed or not listed.</p> <p>(E.g. Excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablution, stores, workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etc...etc...etc.).</p>	<p><b>POTENTIAL IMPACT</b></p> <p>(e.g. dust, noise, drainage surface disturbance, fly rock, surface water contamination, groundwater contamination, air pollution etc....etc...)</p>	<p><b>MITIGATION TYPE</b></p> <p>(modify, remedy, control, or stop through (e.g. noise control measures, storm-water control, dust control, rehabilitation, design measures, blasting controls, avoidance, relocation, alternative activity etc. etc)</p> <p>E.g.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Modify through alternative method.</b></li> <li>• <b>Control through noise control</b></li> <li>• <b>Control through management and monitoring</b></li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Remedy through rehabilitation..</b></p>	<p><b>TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION</b></p> <p>Describe the time period when the measures in the environmental management programme must be implemented Measures must be implemented when required.</p> <p>With regard to Rehabilitation specifically this must take place at the earliest opportunity. .With regard to Rehabilitation, therefore state either:-..</p> <p>Upon cessation of the individual activity</p> <p>or.</p> <p>Upon the cessation of mining, bulk sampling or Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) prospecting as the case may be.</p>	<p><b>COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS</b></p> <p>(A description of how each of the recommendations in 2.11.6 read with 2.12 and 2.15.2 herein will comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practices that have been identified by Competent Authorities)</p>
<p>Clearance of vegetation</p>	<p>Loss or fragmentation of habitats</p>	<p><b>Existing vegetation</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Vegetation removal must be limited to the prospecting site.</li> <li>2. Vegetation to be removed as it becomes necessary rather than removal of all vegetation throughout the site in one step.</li> <li>3. No vegetation to be used for firewood.</li> </ol>	<p>Duration of operation</p>	<p>The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.</p>

		<p>4. Exotic and invasive plant species should not be allowed to establish, if the development is approved.</p> <p><b>Rehabilitation</b></p> <p>5. All damaged areas shall be rehabilitated upon completion of the contract.</p> <p>6. Re-vegetation of the disturbed site is aimed at approximating as near as possible the natural vegetative conditions prevailing prior to construction.</p> <p>7. All natural areas impacted during construction/prospecting must be rehabilitated with locally indigenous grasses typical of the representative botanical unit.</p> <p>8. Rehabilitation must take place in a phased approach as soon as possible.</p> <p>9. Rehabilitation process must make use of species indigenous to the area. Seeds from surrounding seed banks can be used for re-seeding.</p> <p>10. Rehabilitation must be executed in such a manner that surface run-off will not cause erosion of disturbed areas.</p> <p>11. Planting of indigenous tree species in areas not to be cultivated or built on must be encouraged.</p> <p><b>Demarcation of prospecting area</b></p> <p>12. All plants not interfering with prospecting operations shall be left undisturbed clearly marked and indicated on the site plan.</p> <p>13. The prospecting area must be well demarcated and no construction activities must be allowed outside of this demarcated footprint.</p> <p>14. Vegetation removal must be phased in order to reduce impact of construction/prospecting.</p> <p>15. Site office and laydown areas must be clearly demarcated and no encroachment must occur beyond demarcated areas.</p>		
--	--	---	--	--

		<p>16. Strict and regular auditing of the prospecting process to ensure containment of the prospecting and laydown areas.</p> <p>17. Soils must be kept free of petrochemical solutions that may be kept on site during construction/prospecting. Spillage can result in a loss of soil functionality thus limiting the re-establishment of flora.</p> <p><b>Utilisation of resources</b></p> <p>18. Gathering of firewood, fruit, muti plants, or any other natural material onsite or in areas adjacent to the site is prohibited unless with prior approval of the ECO.</p> <p><b>Exotic vegetation</b></p> <p>19. Alien vegetation on the site will need to be controlled.</p> <p>20. The Contractor should be responsible for implementing a programme of weed control (particularly in areas where soil has been disturbed); and grassing of any remaining stockpiles to prevent weed invasion.</p> <p>21. The spread of exotic species occurring throughout the site should be controlled.</p> <p><b>Herbicides</b></p> <p>22. Herbicide use shall only be allowed according to contract specifications. The application shall be according to set specifications and under supervision of a qualified technician. The possibility of leaching into the surrounding environment shall be properly investigated and only environmentally friendly herbicides shall be used.</p> <p>23. The use of pesticides and herbicides on the site must be discouraged as these impact on important pollinator species of indigenous vegetation.</p> <p><b>Fauna</b></p>		
--	--	---	--	--

		<p>24. Rehabilitation to be undertaken as soon as possible after prospecting has been completed.</p> <p>25. No trapping or snaring to fauna on the construction/prospecting site should be allowed.</p> <p>26. No faunal species must be disturbed, trapped, hunted or killed by maintenance staff during any routine maintenance at the development.</p>		
Prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) – excavations	Loss of topsoil	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Contractor should, prior to the commencement of earthworks determine the average depth of topsoil, and agree on this with the ECO. The full depth of topsoil should be stripped from areas affected by construction/prospecting and related activities prior to the commencement of major earthworks. This should include the building footprints, working areas and storage areas. Topsoil must be reused where possible to rehabilitate disturbed areas.</li> <li>2. Care must be taken not to mix topsoil and subsoil during stripping.</li> <li>3. The topsoil must be conserved on site in and around the pit/trench area.</li> <li>4. Subsoil and overburden in the prospecting area should be stockpiled separately to be returned for backfilling in the correct soil horizon order.</li> <li>5. If stockpiles are exposed to windy conditions or heavy rain, they should be covered either by vegetation or geofabric, depending on the duration of the project. Stockpiles may further be protected by the construction of berms or low brick walls around their bases.</li> <li>6. Stockpiles should be kept clear of weeds and alien vegetation growth by regular weeding.</li> <li>7. Where contamination of soil is expected, analysis must be done prior to disposal of soil to determine the appropriate disposal route. Proof from an approved waste disposal site where contaminated soils are dumped if and when a spillage/leakage occurs should be attained and given to the project manager.</li> </ol>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

		<p>Establish an effective record keeping system for each area where soil is disturbed for prospecting purposes. These records should be included in environmental performance reports, and should include all the records below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Record the GPS coordinates of each area.</li> <li>• Record the date of topsoil stripping.</li> <li>• Record the GPS coordinates of where the topsoil is stockpiled.</li> <li>• Record the date of cessation prospecting activities at the particular site.</li> <li>• Photograph the area on cessation of prospecting activities.</li> <li>• Record date and depth of re-spreading of topsoil.</li> <li>• Photograph the area on completion of rehabilitation and on an annual basis thereafter to show vegetation establishment and evaluate progress of restoration over time.</li> </ul>		
	Erosion	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. An effective system of run-off control should be implemented, where it is required, that collects and safely disseminates run-off water from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion.</li> <li>2. Periodical site inspection should be included in environmental performance reporting that inspects the effectiveness of the run-off control system and specifically records the occurrence of any erosion on site or downstream.</li> <li>3. Wind screening and stormwater control should be undertaken to prevent soil loss from the site.</li> <li>4. The use of silt fences and sand bags must be implemented in areas that are susceptible to erosion.</li> <li>5. Other erosion control measures that can be implemented are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Brush packing with cleared vegetation</li> <li>○ Mulch or chip packing</li> <li>○ Planting of vegetation</li> <li>○ Hydroseeding/hand sowing</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Sensitive areas need to be identified prior to construction/prospecting so that the necessary precautions can be implemented.</li> <li>7. All erosion control mechanisms need to be regularly maintained.</li> <li>8. Seeding of topsoil and subsoil stockpiles to prevent wind and water erosion of soil surfaces.</li> <li>9. Retention of vegetation where possible to avoid soil erosion.</li> <li>10. Vegetation clearance should be phased to ensure that the minimum area of soil is exposed to potential erosion at any one time.</li> <li>11. Re-vegetation of disturbed surfaces should occur immediately after construction/prospecting activities are completed. This should be done through seeding with indigenous grasses.</li> <li>12. No impediment to the natural water flow other than approved erosion control works is permitted.</li> <li>13. To prevent stormwater damage, the increase in stormwater run-off resulting from construction/prospecting activities must be estimated and the drainage system assessed accordingly. A drainage plan must be submitted to the Engineer for approval and must include the location and design criteria of any temporary stream crossings.</li> <li>14. Stockpiles not used in three (3) months after stripping must be seeded/backfilled to prevent dust and erosion.</li> </ol>		
	Air Pollution	<p><b>Dust control</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>14. Wheel washing and damping down of un-surfaced and un-vegetated areas.</li> <li>15. Retention of vegetation where possible will reduce dust travel.</li> <li>16. Clearing activities must only be done during agreed working times and permitting weather conditions to avoid drifting of sand and dust into neighbouring areas.</li> </ol>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

		<p>17. Damping down of all exposed soil surfaces with a water bowser or sprinklers when necessary to reduce dust.</p> <p>18. The Contractor shall be responsible for dust control on site to ensure no nuisance is caused to the neighbouring communities.</p> <p>19. A speed limit of 30km/h must not be exceeded on site.</p> <p>20. Any complaints or claims emanating from the lack of dust control shall be attended to immediately by the Contractor.</p> <p>21. Any dirt roads that are utilised by the workers must be regularly maintained to ensure that dust levels are controlled.</p> <p><b>Odour control</b></p> <p>22. Regular servicing of vehicles in order to limit gaseous emissions.</p> <p>23. Regular servicing of onsite toilets to avoid potential odours.</p> <p><b>Rehabilitation</b></p> <p>24. The Contractor should commence rehabilitation of exposed soil surfaces as soon as practical after completion of earthworks.</p> <p><b>Fire prevention</b></p> <p>25. No open fires shall be allowed on site under any circumstance. All cooking shall be done in demarcated areas that are safe and cannot cause runaway fires.</p> <p>26. The Contractor shall have operational fire-fighting equipment available on site at all times. The level of firefighting equipment must be assessed and evaluated through a typical risk assessment process.</p>		
	Noise	<p>1. The prospecting activities must aim to adhere to the relevant noise regulations and limit noise to within standard working hours in order to reduce</p>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards,



		<p>disturbance of dwellings in close proximity to the development.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Pans, power plants, crushers, workshops and other noisy fixed facilities should be located well away from noise sensitive areas. Once the proposed final layouts are made available by the Contractor(s), the sites must be evaluated in detail and specific measures designed in to the system.</li> <li>3. Truck traffic should be routed away from noise sensitive areas, where possible.</li> <li>4. Noise levels must be kept within acceptable limits.</li> <li>5. Noisy operations should be combined so that they occur where possible at the same time.</li> <li>6. Mine workers to wear necessary ear protection gear.</li> <li>7. Noisy activities to take place during allocated hours.</li> <li>8. Noise from labourers must be controlled.</li> <li>9. Noise suppression measures must be applied to all equipment. Equipment must be kept in good working order and where appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site.</li> <li>10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub-Contractors by the Contractors own transport.</li> <li>11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.</li> <li>12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of a machine.</li> </ol>	<p>thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.</p>
--	--	--	--

	<p>Impact on potential cultural and heritage artefacts</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Any finds must be reported to the nearest National Monuments office to comply with the National Heritage Resources Act (Act No 25 of 1999) and to DEA.</li> <li>2) Local museums as well as the South African Heritage Resource Agency (SAHRA) should be informed if any artefacts/ fossils are uncovered in the affected area.</li> <li>3) The Contractor must ensure that his workforce is aware of the necessity of reporting any possible historical, archaeological or palaeontological finds to the ECO so that appropriate action can be taken.</li> <li>4) Known sites should be clearly marked in order that they can be avoided. The work force should also be informed that fenced-off areas are no-go areas.</li> <li>5) The ECO must also survey for heritage and palaeontological artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>6) All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7) Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> <li>8) Under no circumstances shall any artefacts be removed, destroyed or interfered with by anyone on the site; and contractors and workers shall be advised of the</li> </ol>	<p>Duration of operation</p>	<p>The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.</p>
--	--	---	------------------------------	--

		<p>penalties associated with the unlawful removal of cultural, historical, archaeological or palaeontological artefacts, as set out in the NHRA (Act No. 25 of 1999), Section 51. (1).</p> <p>9) If anything of Archaeological and/or paleontological significance is found during the construction and operational phase of the mine the following applies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NHRA 38(4)c(i) – If any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed development, SAHRA APM Unit (021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;</li> <li>• NHRA 38(4)c(ii) – If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;</li> <li>• NHRA 38(4)e – The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists: i) If heritage resources are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance,</li> </ul>		
--	--	--	--	--

		<p>a Phase 2 rescue operation may be required subject to permits issued by SAHRA;</p> <p><b>HIA findings and mitigation:</b> Three (3) areas were identified to be of importance as well as representative of the larger Stone Age material context in the local region. These site are classified as no-go areas for the prospecting activities.</p> <p><b>Site 1</b> – Coordinates: S 29,34038; E 23,18431  <b>Site 2</b> – Coordinates: S 29,37419; E 23,09825  <b>Site 3</b> – Coordinates: S 29,39984; E 23,11374</p> <p>With the coordinates presented above as central point, the following areas has to be set out and avoided.  <b>Site 1</b> – 3,82ha  <b>Site 2</b> – 3,63ha  <b>Site 2</b> – 9,26ha</p> <p>(1) Avoidance/Preserve: This is viewed to be the primary form of mitigation and applies where any type of development occurs within a formally protected or significant or sensitive heritage context and is likely to have a high negative impact. This measure often includes the change / alteration of development planning and therefore impact zones in order not to impact on resources. The site should be retained in situ and a buffer zone should be created around it, either temporary (by means of danger tape) or permanently (wire fence or built wall).</p>		
Waste Management		<p><b>Litter management</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refuse bins must be placed at strategic positions to ensure that litter does not accumulate within the construction/prospecting site.</li> <li>2. The Contractor shall supply waste collection bins where such is not available and all solid waste</li> </ol>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

		<p>collected shall be disposed of at registered/licensed landfill.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Good housekeeping practices should be implemented to regularly maintain the litter and rubble situation on the construction/prospecting site.</li> <li>4. If possible and feasible, all waste generated on site must be separated into glass, plastic, paper, metal and wood and recycled. An independent contractor can be appointed to conduct this recycling.</li> <li>5. Littering by the employees of the Contractor shall not be allowed under any circumstances. The ECO shall monitor the neatness of the work sites as well as the Contractor campsite.</li> <li>6. Skip waste containers should be maintained on site. These should be kept covered and arrangements made for them to be collected regularly.</li> <li>7. All waste must be removed from the site and transported to a landfill site promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin or produce odours.</li> <li>8. Where a registered waste site is not available close to the construction/prospecting site, the Contractor shall provide a method statement with regard to waste management.</li> <li>9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.</li> <li>10. Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site.</li> <li>11. All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin or produce odours.</li> </ol> <p><b>Hazardous waste</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>12. All waste hazardous materials must be carefully stored as advised by the ECO, and then disposed of offsite at a licensed landfill site, where practical. Incineration may be used where relevant.</li> <li>13. Contaminants to be stored safely to avoid spillage.</li> </ol>		
--	--	---	--	--

		<p>14. Machinery must be properly maintained to keep oil leaks in check.</p> <p>15. All necessary precaution measures shall be taken to prevent soil or surface water pollution from hazardous materials used during construction/prospecting and any spills shall immediately be cleaned up and all affected areas rehabilitated.</p> <p><b>Sanitation</b></p> <p>16. The Contractor shall install mobile chemical toilets on the site.</p> <p>17. Staff shall be sensitised to the fact that they should use these facilities at all times. No indiscriminate sanitary activities on site shall be allowed.</p> <p>18. Toilets shall be serviced regularly and the ECO shall inspect toilets regularly.</p> <p>19. Toilets should be no closer than 50m or above the 1:100 year flood line from any natural or manmade water bodies or drainage lines or alternatively located in a place approved of by the Engineer.</p> <p>20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility.</p> <p>21. The construction of “Long Drop” toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant.</p> <p>22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff.</p> <p><b>Remedial actions</b></p> <p>23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.</p> <p>24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.</p> <p>25. The ECO must determine the precise method of treatment for polluted soil. This could involve the</p>		
--	--	---	--	--

		<p>application of soil absorbent materials as well as oil-digestive powders to the contaminated soil.</p> <p>26. If a spill occurs on an impermeable surface such as cement or concrete, the surface spill must be contained using oil absorbent material.</p> <p>27. If necessary, oil absorbent sheets or pads must be attached to leaky machinery or infrastructure.</p> <p>28. Materials used for the remediation of petrochemical spills must be used according to product specifications and guidance for use.</p> <p>29. Contaminated remediation materials must be carefully removed from the area of the spill so as to prevent further release of petrochemicals to the environment and stored in adequate containers until appropriate disposal.</p>		
Water Use and Quality	Water pollution	<p><b>Water Use</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Develop a sustainable water supply management plan to minimise the impact to natural systems by managing water use, avoiding depletion of aquifers and minimising impacts to water users.</li> <li>2. Water must be reused, recycled or treated where possible.</li> </ol> <p><b>Water Quality</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. The quality and quantity of effluent streams discharged to the environment including stormwater should be managed and treated to meet applicable effluent discharge guidelines.</li> <li>4. Discharge to surface water should not result in contaminant concentrations in excess of local ambient water quality criteria outside a scientifically established mixing zone.</li> <li>5. Efficient oil and grease traps or sumps should be installed and maintained at refueling facilities, workshops, fuel storage depots, and containment areas and spill kits should be available with emergency response plans.</li> </ol> <p><b>Stormwater</b></p>		



		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. The site must be managed in order to prevent pollution of drains, downstream watercourses or groundwater, due to suspended solids and silt or chemical pollutants.</li> <li>7. Silt fences should be used to prevent any soil entering the stormwater drains.</li> <li>8. Temporary cut off drains and berms may be required to capture stormwater and promote infiltration.</li> <li>9. Promote a water saving mind set with construction/prospecting workers in order to Contractor ensure less water wastage.</li> <li>10. Hazardous substances must be stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution.</li> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm water system or nearby streams, rivers or erosion channels or dongas.</li> <li>15. The cut-off trenches and silt fences will be installed where necessary as to control runoff storm water by attenuating it and control the movement of sediment on the premises. These structures will be monitored on a regular basis. It is suggested that it be monitored on a weekly basis during the rainy season, and after possible</li> </ol>		
--	--	--	--	--

		<p>rain events during the dry season. If these practices are found to be insufficient for the control of storm water and sedimentation, other alternatives should immediately be investigated and implemented.</p> <p><b>Groundwater resource protection</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>16. Process solution storage ponds and other impoundments designed to hold non fresh water or un-treated process effluents should be lined and be equipped with sufficient wells to enable monitoring of water levels and quality.</li> <li>17. Prevent dirty water runoff from leaving the general mining area;</li> <li>18. Compact the base of dirty areas, like the workshops and oil and diesel storage areas to minimise infiltration of poor-quality water to the underlying aquifers;</li> <li>19. Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</li> <li>20. Contain dirty water in return water dams and re-use dirty water for dust suppression and make up water in the plant;</li> <li>21. Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>22. A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as stipulated in the DWS Best Practice Guidelines. The implementation of the mine closure plan, and the application for the closure certificate can be conducted during the decommissioned phase</li> </ol> <p><b>Sanitation</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>23. Adequate sanitary facilities and ablutions must be provided for construction workers (1 toilet per every 15 workers).</li> </ol>		
--	--	---	--	--

		<p>24. The facilities must be regularly serviced to reduce the risk of surface or groundwater pollution.</p> <p><b>Concrete mixing</b></p> <p>25. Concrete contaminated water must not enter soil or any natural drainage system as this disturbs the natural acidity of the soil and affects plant growth.</p> <p><b>Public areas</b></p> <p>26. Food preparation areas should be provided with adequate washing facilities and food refuse should be stored in sealed refuse bins which should be removed from site on a regular basis.</p> <p>27. The Contractor should take steps to ensure that littering by construction workers does not occur and persons should be employed on site to collect litter from the site and immediate surroundings, including litter accumulating at fence lines.</p> <p>28. No washing or servicing of vehicles on site.</p> <p><b>Infrastructure</b></p> <p>29. Infrastructure should adhere to the GN704 of the South African National Water Act (36 of 1998) and not be located within the 1:100- year Return Period flood line. This is essential for the safety of human life as well as for the protection of infrastructure from flood inundation and destruction.</p>		
--	--	---	--	--

Mitigation measures from the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment Report (Appendix 12)

Impact	Source of Impact	Recommended Mitigation Measures
<p><b>Alteration of the flow regime of the watercourse</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Infrastructure development within watercourses</li> <li>• Removal and disturbance of watercourse habitat and vegetation</li> <li>• Habitat fragmentation</li> <li>• Impoundments within the watercourse</li> <li>• Lack of adequate rehabilitation resulting in colonization by invasive plants</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Excavation from the watercourses</li> <li>• Clearing of vegetation</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Any activities that take place within 32 meters of a wetland or watercourse or the 1:100 year flood lines will require authorisation in terms of the relevant regulations of NEMA, however as far as possible infrastructure should be placed outside of buffer lines.</li> <li>• Demarcate the watercourse areas and buffer zones to limit disturbance, clearly mark these areas as no-go areas.</li> <li>• No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>• All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>• Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed stream banks.</li> <li>• Ensure that erosion management and sediment controls are strictly implemented from the beginning of site clearing activities.</li> <li>• All areas should be re-sloped and top-soiled where necessary and reseeded with indigenous grasses to stabilise the loose material.</li> <li>• Monitor the occurrence of erosion during the rainy season and take immediate corrective action where needed.</li> <li>• A sensitivity map has been developed for the study area, indicating the wetland systems, and their relevant buffer zones. It is recommended that this sensitivity map be considered during all phases of the development and with special mentioning of the planning of infrastructure, in order to aid in the conservation of and minimise impact on the wetland and aquatic habitat and resources within the study site.</li> <li>• Any areas where bank failure is observed, due to the prospecting impacts, should be immediately repaired.</li> <li>• As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> <li>• Operational phase activities should not take place within watercourses or buffer zones.</li> <li>• The duration of impacts on the wetlands should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to</li> </ul>

		<p>prevent loss of floral habitat.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> <li>Rehabilitation of disturbed areas as a result of construction must be implemented immediately upon completion of construction.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Changing the physical structure within a water resource (habitat)</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Infrastructure development within watercourses</li> <li>Loss of vegetation</li> <li>Flow alteration</li> <li>Erosion</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Excavation from the watercourses leading to degraded river channels.</li> <li>Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> <li>Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> <li>Loss of biodiversity</li> <li>Alteration and/or loss of hydrological flow classes</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Other than approved and authorized structures, no other development or maintenance infrastructure is allowed within the delineated watercourse and riparian areas or their associated buffer zones.</li> <li>Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> <li>Monitor the occurrence of erosion during the rainy season and take immediate corrective action where needed.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Bi-annual biomonitoring of aquatic macro-invertebrates and diatoms within the riverine systems is essential.</li> <li>All maintenance within watercourses must be restricted to the dry season.</li> <li>Maintenance activities should not impact on rehabilitated or naturally vegetated areas.</li> <li>The duration of impacts on the riverine systems should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>Rehabilitation must ensure that wetland structure and function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the ongoing functionality of the systems at pre-mining levels.</li> <li>All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Alteration of the amount of sediment entering the water resource and associated change in turbidity</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vegetation clearance causing sedimentation</li> <li>Earthworks activities</li> <li>Disturbance of soil surface and runoff characteristics</li> <li>Erosion</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Excavation from the watercourses leading to degraded river channels.</li> <li>Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Buffer zones should be maintained, in order to minimise sedimentation of the downstream areas.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>Ensure that erosion management and sediment controls are strictly implemented from the beginning of site clearing activities.</li> <li>All areas should be re-sloped and top-soiled where necessary and reseeded with indigenous grasses to stabilise the loose material.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> <li>• Loss of biodiversity</li> <li>• Alteration and/or loss of hydrological flow classes</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<p>stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed stream banks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> <li>• Erosion control measures, such as berms, must be implemented to manage runoff from roads to prevent erosion and pollution.</li> <li>• Silt screens should be used where necessary.</li> <li>• Rehabilitation of disturbed areas as a result of construction must be implemented immediately upon completion of construction.</li> <li>• Rehabilitation must ensure that riparian structure and function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the ongoing functionality of the larger riparian systems at pre-mining levels.</li> <li>• All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> <li>• The duration of impacts on the riverine systems should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>• Maintain flood capacity, particularly in areas with significant flood hazards.</li> </ul>
<p>Alteration of water quality</p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> </ul> <p><u>Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintenance of vehicles and machinery</li> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> <li>• Excavation from the watercourses and the release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils</li> <li>• Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> </ul> <p><u>Decommissioning:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All vehicles must be regularly inspected for leaks.</li> <li>• Re-fuelling must take place on a sealed surface area to prevent hydrocarbon pollution.</li> <li>• All spills should be cleaned up immediately and disposed of.</li> <li>• Spill kits should be readily available and easily accessible throughout the site.</li> <li>• All chemicals must be stored safely on site, outside the buffer areas and surrounded by bunds. Chemical storage containers must be regularly inspected for early leak detection.</li> <li>• Littering must be prevented by effective site management and the provision of bins.</li> <li>• Provision of adequate sanitation facilities located outside of the delineated buffer zones.</li> <li>• An emergency spill procedure should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>• No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse.</li> <li>• All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>• Stockpiles must be located away from river channels, wetlands and drainage lines.</li> <li>• Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed riverbanks.</li> </ul>
<p>Loss of terrestrial habitat</p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Areas that are stripped during construction and operation should be re-vegetated with</li> </ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> </ul> <p><b>Operational:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removal of substrate within watercourses</li> <li>• Clearing of vegetation during mining operations</li> </ul> <p><b>Decommissioning:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<p>indigenous vegetation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is recommended that areas to be developed be specifically demarcated so that during the construction phase, only the demarcated areas be impacted upon (including fencing off the defined project area) and preventing movement of workers into natural areas.</li> <li>• The duration of the mining should be minimized to as short term as possible, in order to reduce the period of disturbance on fauna and flora.</li> <li>• Areas of indigenous vegetation should under no circumstances be fragmented or disturbed for used as an area for dumping of waste.</li> <li>• As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> <li>• All staff and visitors to the site must undergo an induction process and must be made aware of the sensitive nature of the environment and floral species which occur there.</li> <li>• The area must be re-vegetated with plant and grass species which are endemic to the exact vegetation types.</li> <li>• Rehabilitation measures that are implemented must be continually monitored for a minimum period of four years to ensure that proper succession has occurred and that there is no erosion occurring.</li> <li>• An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> </ul>
<p>Loss of Aquatic Biota</p>	<p><b>Construction:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Sedimentation</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> </ul> <p><b>Operational:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintenance of vehicles and machinery</li> <li>• Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>• Discharge of sewage</li> <li>• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> <li>• Excavation from the watercourses and the release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils</li> <li>• Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> <li>• Sedimentation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bi-annual biomonitoring of aquatic macro-invertebrates and diatoms within the riverine systems is essential.</li> <li>• Refer to Mitigation Measures regarding water quality and sedimentation as listed above.</li> </ul>



<p><b>Loss of Terrestrial Fauna</b></p>	<p><u>Construction and Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vegetation loss and disturbance – clearing of vegetation</li> <li>• Excessive noise disturbances</li> <li>• Illegal hunting</li> <li>• Habitat fragmentation destruction</li> <li>• Vehicles driving through natural vegetated areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Site clearing to take place in a phased manner (where possible) to allow for any faunal species present to move away from the study site to the surrounding open space areas.</li> <li>• Prior and during vegetation clearance any larger fauna species noted should be given the opportunity to move away from the construction machinery.</li> <li>• Fauna species such as frogs and reptiles that have not moved away should be carefully and safely removed to a suitable location beyond the extent of the development footprint by a suitably qualified ECO trained in the handling and relocation of animals.</li> <li>• Fencing should be erected around the project area to prevent workers and members of the public from entering the surrounding environments. This fence should have small openings to allow wildlife to pass through.</li> <li>• Waste management must be a priority and all waste must be collected and stored adequately. It is recommended that all waste be removed from site on a weekly basis to prevent rodents and pests entering the site.</li> <li>• Should any sensitive or Red Data animal or bird species be encountered during the construction, operation and decommissioning activities, these should be relocated to natural areas in the vicinity. Any sensitive fauna that are inadvertently killed during earthmoving operations should be preserved as museum voucher specimens.</li> <li>• No hunting, trapping or killing of fauna are allowed.</li> <li>• Any lizards, snakes or monitors encountered should be allowed to escape to a suitable habitat away from disturbance.</li> <li>• General avoidance of snakes is the best policy if encountered. Snakes should not be intentionally harmed or killed and allowed free movement away from the area.</li> <li>• Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.</li> <li>• Noise must be kept to an absolute minimum at night to minimise all possible disturbances to amphibian species and nocturnal mammals.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Loss of Terrestrial Flora</b></p>	<p><u>Construction and Operational:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vegetation clearance</li> <li>• Vehicles driving through natural vegetated areas</li> <li>• Habitat fragmentation and destruction</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Areas that are stripped during construction and operation should be re-vegetated with indigenous vegetation as soon as possible. This will also reduce the likelihood of encroachment by alien invasive plant species.</li> <li>• Protected trees and plants shall not be removed or damaged without prior approval, permits or licenses from the relevant authority, this is especially applicable to the Protected Witgat (<i>Boscia albitrunca</i>), which were present on site.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Introduction and spread of alien vegetation</b></p>	<p><u>Construction:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearing of vegetation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proliferation of alien and invasive species is expected within any disturbed areas particularly as there are some alien and invasive species present within the study site.</li> </ul>

	<p><b><u>Operational:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removal of substrate within watercourses</li> <li>• Clearing of vegetation during mining operations</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> <p><b><u>Decommissioning:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>• Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>• Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<p>These species should be eradicated and controlled to prevent further spread beyond.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> <li>• Footprint areas should be kept as small as possible when removing alien plant species.</li> <li>• No vehicles should be allowed to drive through designated sensitive drainage and wetlands areas during the eradication of alien and weed species.</li> <li>• All alien vegetation in the riparian zone should be removed upon completion of mining activities and reseeded with indigenous grasses as specified by a suitably qualified specialist (ecologist).</li> </ul>
--	--	---

**Mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the environmental management programme and reporting thereon, including**

**G. MONITORING OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS**

**H. MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY**

**I. RESPONSIBLE PERSONS**

**J. TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS**

**K. MECHANISM FOR MONITORING COMPLIANCE**

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY and TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
Clearance of vegetation	Loss or fragmentation of habitats	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.
Prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) – excavations	Loss of topsoil Erosion Air Pollution Noise Impact on potential cultural and heritage artefacts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.
Waste management	Pollution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports

Milnex CC: EIA428 –EIR & EMPr - The proposed Prospecting Right application combined with a Waste Licence application for the prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA), Diamonds General (D), Diamonds (DIA) and Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) near Prieska on Portion 7, a certain portion of the Remaining Extent of Portion 9 (Wouter), Portion 11 (De Hoek), Portion 14 (Stofdraai) (portion of portion 4), the Remaining Extent of Portion 16 (portion of portion 9) (Wouter) and the Remaining Extent of Portion 18 (portion of portion 10) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376, Registration Division: Hay, Northern Cape.

				should be made available to the competent authority if required.
Water Use and Quality	Water pollution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>• Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Environmental Manager</li> <li>• Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.

**L. A PROGRAM FOR REPORTING ON COMPLIANCE, TAKING INTO ACCOUNT THE REQUIREMENTS AS BY THE REGULATIONS;**

External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the Competent Authority if required.

**M. AN ENVIRONMENTAL AWARENESS PLAN DESCRIBING THE MANNER IN WHICH—**

- (i) **Manner in which the applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work.**

**Bondeo 140 CC** will implement an Environmental Awareness Plan which will include various mechanisms for informing employees of environmental risks resulting from their work, including:

- Induction training for full –time staff and contractors;
- In-house training sessions to be held with relevant employees;
- On the job training regarding environmental issues
- Training and skills development

The above measures will be implemented through an Environmental Communication Strategy to be implemented.

See the attached **appendix 11** for the Awareness plan

- (ii) **Manner in which risks will be dealt with in order to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment.**

**Bondeo 140 CC** will implement an incident reporting and reporting procedure in order to identify risks timeously and implement actions to avoid or minimise environmental impacts.

**N. SPECIFIC INFORMATION REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY  
(Among others, Confirm that the financial provision will be reviewed annually).**

No specific information requirements have been detailed by the Competent Authority.

\*\*\*\*\*END OF THE REPORT\*\*\*\*\*